



# **Colossians**

**translationNotes**

v6

# Copyrights & Licensing

## License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to [help@door43.org](mailto:help@door43.org)

**Version:** 6

**Published:** 2017-02-22

---

## Table of Contents

<b>Copyrights &amp; Licensing</b> . . . . .	<b>1</b>
<b>translationNotes</b> . . . . .	<b>7</b>
Introduction to Colossians . . . . .	7
Colossians 1 General Notes . . . . .	14
Colossians 1:1-3 . . . . .	15
Colossians 1:4-6 . . . . .	17
Colossians 1:7-8 . . . . .	19
Colossians 1:9-10 . . . . .	21
Colossians 1:11-12 . . . . .	23
Colossians 1:13-14 . . . . .	25
Colossians 1:15-17 . . . . .	26
Colossians 1:18-20 . . . . .	28
Colossians 1:21-23 . . . . .	30
Colossians 1:24-27 . . . . .	32
Colossians 1:28-29 . . . . .	34
Colossians 2 General Notes . . . . .	35
Colossians 2:1-3 . . . . .	36
Colossians 2:4-5 . . . . .	38
Colossians 2:6-7 . . . . .	39
Colossians 2:8-9 . . . . .	40
Colossians 2:10-12 . . . . .	42
Colossians 2:13-15 . . . . .	44
Colossians 2:16-17 . . . . .	46
Colossians 2:18-19 . . . . .	47
Colossians 2:20-23 . . . . .	49
Colossians 3 General Notes . . . . .	51
Colossians 3:1-4 . . . . .	52
Colossians 3:5-8 . . . . .	54
Colossians 3:9-11 . . . . .	56
Colossians 3:12-14 . . . . .	58
Colossians 3:15-17 . . . . .	60
Colossians 3:18-21 . . . . .	62
Colossians 3:22-25 . . . . .	63
Colossians 4 General Notes . . . . .	65
Colossians 4:1 . . . . .	66
Colossians 4:2-4 . . . . .	67
Colossians 4:5-6 . . . . .	69
Colossians 4:7-9 . . . . .	70
Colossians 4:10-11 . . . . .	72
Colossians 4:12-14 . . . . .	73
Colossians 4:15-17 . . . . .	75

Table of Contents

---

Colossians 4:18 . . . . .	76
<b>translationQuestions</b> . . . . .	<b>77</b>
Colossians 1 . . . . .	77
Colossians 2 . . . . .	80
Colossians 3 . . . . .	83
Colossians 4 . . . . .	86
<b>translationWords</b> . . . . .	<b>88</b>
afflict, affliction . . . . .	88
angel, archangel . . . . .	89
apostle, apostleship . . . . .	91
authority . . . . .	92
baptize, baptism . . . . .	93
Barnabas . . . . .	95
believe, believe in, belief . . . . .	96
believer . . . . .	97
beloved . . . . .	99
blameless . . . . .	100
blood . . . . .	101
brother . . . . .	102
Christ, Messiah . . . . .	103
church, Church . . . . .	105
circumcise, circumcision . . . . .	107
Colossae, Colossians . . . . .	108
create, creation, Creator . . . . .	109
cross . . . . .	110
darkness . . . . .	111
death, die, dead . . . . .	112
disobey, disobedient, disobedience . . . . .	114
dominion . . . . .	115
chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect . . . . .	116
evil, wicked, wickedness . . . . .	117
faith . . . . .	119
faithful, faithfulness . . . . .	121
fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh . . . . .	122
feast . . . . .	123
firstborn . . . . .	124
flesh . . . . .	125
forgive, forgiveness . . . . .	126
sexual immorality . . . . .	127
fruit, fruitful . . . . .	128
Gentile . . . . .	130
glory, glorious . . . . .	131
God . . . . .	132

God the Father, heavenly Father, Father . . . . .	134
good, goodness . . . . .	136
good news, gospel . . . . .	138
grace, gracious . . . . .	140
Greek, Grecian . . . . .	141
head . . . . .	142
heart . . . . .	144
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly . . . . .	145
holy, holiness . . . . .	146
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord . . . . .	147
house . . . . .	149
humble, humility . . . . .	150
idol, idolatrous . . . . .	151
image of God, image . . . . .	152
in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him . . . . .	153
inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir . . . . .	154
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus . . . . .	156
Jew, Jewish, Jews . . . . .	158
John Mark . . . . .	159
joy, joyful . . . . .	160
kingdom . . . . .	161
kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven . . . . .	163
know, knowledge, make known . . . . .	165
labor, laborer . . . . .	166
law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh . . . . .	167
lord, master, sir . . . . .	169
Lord . . . . .	170
love . . . . .	171
Luke . . . . .	173
mystery, hidden truth . . . . .	174
Paul, Saul . . . . .	175
peace, peaceful . . . . .	177
persevere, perseverance . . . . .	178
power, powers . . . . .	179
pray, prayer . . . . .	180
proclaim, proclamation . . . . .	181
psalm . . . . .	182
raise, rise, risen, arise, arose . . . . .	183
reconcile, reconciliation . . . . .	185
redeem, redemption, redeemer . . . . .	186
rejoice . . . . .	187
reveal, revelation . . . . .	188
right hand . . . . .	189

*Table of Contents*

---

Sabbath . . . . .	190
servant, slave, slavery . . . . .	191
serve, service . . . . .	193
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning . . . . .	194
Son of God, the Son, Son . . . . .	196
spirit, spiritual . . . . .	198
suffer, suffering . . . . .	200
throne . . . . .	201
Timothy . . . . .	202
tradition . . . . .	203
trespass . . . . .	204
true, truth, come true . . . . .	205
Tychicus . . . . .	207
uncircumcised, uncircumcision . . . . .	208
unclean . . . . .	209
unrighteous, unrighteousness . . . . .	210
walk . . . . .	211
will of God . . . . .	212
wise, wisdom . . . . .	213
witness, eyewitness . . . . .	214
word . . . . .	216
worship . . . . .	217
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless . . . . .	218
<b>translationAcademy . . . . .</b>	<b>219</b>
Biblical Imagery - Man-made Objects . . . . .	219
Abstract Nouns . . . . .	221
Active or Passive . . . . .	224
Doublet . . . . .	227
Euphemism . . . . .	229
Exclusive “We” . . . . .	231
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information . . . . .	233
Hyperbole . . . . .	235
Idiom . . . . .	238
Inclusive “We” . . . . .	240
Metaphor . . . . .	242
Metonymy . . . . .	247
Parallelism . . . . .	249
Pronouns . . . . .	251
Rhetorical Question . . . . .	253
Synecdoche . . . . .	256
Forms of You . . . . .	258
Translating Son and Father . . . . .	259
How to Translate Names . . . . .	261

Textual Variants . . . . .	265
Translate Unknowns . . . . .	268
Connecting Words . . . . .	271

## translationNotes

### Introduction to Colossians

#### Part 1: General Introduction

#### Outline of the Book of Colossians

1. Greeting, thanksgiving, and prayer (1:1-12)
2. The person and work of Christ
  - a) Deliverance and redemption (1:13-14)
  - b) Christ: the Image of the invisible God, and the One who is over all creation (1:15-17)
  - c) Christ is the Head of the Church, and the Church trusts in him (1:18-2:7)
3. Tests of faithfulness
  - a) Philosophical challenges (2:8-10)
  - b) Traditions and observances challenges (2:16,17)
  - c) Worship of angels opposed (2:18-19)
  - d) True godliness not rigid rules and unbending traditions (2:20-23)
4. Teaching and Living
  - a) Life in Christ (3:1-4)
  - b) Old life and new (3:5-17)
  - c) Christian family (3:18-4:1)
5. Christian behavior (4:2-6)
6. Closing and greetings, in 4:7-18
  - a) Paul thanks Tychicus and Onesimus (4:7-9)
  - b) Paul sends greetings from his associates (4:10-14)
  - c) Paul gives directions to Archippus and the Christians in Laodicea (4:15-17)
  - d) Paul's personal greeting (4:18)

#### What is the Book of Colossians about?

Much of Paul's letter to the believers in the city of Colossae is about false teachings that they had been given. There may have been some Jewish Christians who were trying to persuade the other believers to follow the Jewish laws from the Old Testament, especially the law requiring circumcision. Paul wanted to teach them that only Christ is needed for God to accept them; teachings based on human reasoning are useless.



**How should the title of this book be translated?**

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, “Colossians.” Or they may choose a clearer title, such as “Paul’s Letter to the Church in Colossae,” or “A Letter to the Christians in Colossae.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts****What were the religious issues that the church in Colossae struggled with?**

In the church in Colossae, there were false teachers. These people taught things contrary to scripture. Their exact teaching is unknown, but it probably involved teaching believers that it was acceptable to continue practicing their old religious customs. For those from a Jewish background, this included trying to follow the law of Moses. For those from a Gentile background, it may have included teachings that the human body was evil and that Jesus was not truly human. (See: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

**How does Paul use the imagery of heaven and earth?**

In this letter, Paul frequently speaks of heaven as above and distinguishes it from the earth, which Scripture speaks of as being below. The purpose of this imagery is not to teach that things on earth are inherently evil. Instead, the Christians are to live in a way that brings honor to God who lives in heaven, which is “above.” (See: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#))

**Part 3: Important Translation Issues****How are the ideas of “holy” and “sanctify” represented in Colossians ULB?**

The scriptures use such words to indicate any one of various ideas. For this reason, it is often difficult for translators to represent them well in their versions. In Colossians, the context mainly indicates a simple reference to Christians without implying any particular role filled by them. So Colossians ULB uses “believer” or “believers.” (See 1:2, 12, 26)

**Was Jesus created, or is he eternal?**

Jesus is God, who became a human being. It was in this way that he joined the nature of God to the nature of humanity. Jesus was not a created being, but has always existed as God. There is potential for confusion in Colossians 1:15: ” (Jesus) He is the firstborn of all creation” and “The Son has first place over everything that he has created” (UDB). It is important that a translation not imply that Jesus is a created being; rather, he is the God-man, the person uniting the divine nature with human nature.

**What does Paul mean by the expression “in Christ,” “in the Lord,” etc.?**

Paul means to express the idea of very close union with Christ and the believers. Please see the introduction to the book of Romans for more details about this kind of expression.

### What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Colossians?

The text of some English translations do not agree concerning what to include. This is because of the discovery of manuscripts that many believe are more accurate. The follow are the most significant issues in the Book of Colossians:

- “Grace to you and peace from God our Father” (1:2). The ULB, UDB, and many other modern versions have this reading. Some older versions have a longer reading: “Grace to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.”
- “Epaphras, our beloved fellow servant, a faithful servant of Christ for us” (1:7). Many versions, including the ULB and UDB, have this reading. However, other versions read “for you”: “Epaphras, our beloved fellow servant, a faithful servant of Christ for you.” If other versions exist in the general region, translators should consider using the reading found in those versions.
- “the Father, who has qualified you for a share in the inheritance in light” (1:12). The ULB and UDB have this reading. However, some other versions have “the Father, who has qualified us for a share in the inheritance in light.” If other versions exist in the general region, translators should consider using the reading found in those versions.
- “In his Son we have redemption.” (1:14) The ULB, UDB, and many other modern versions have this reading. Some older versions read: “In his Son we have redemption through his blood.”
- “and forgave us all of our trespasses” (2:13). The ULB, UDB, and many other modern versions have this reading. Some older versions read: “and forgave you all of your trespasses.”
- “When Christ appears, who is your life” (3:4). The ULB, UDB, and many other modern versions have this reading. Some older versions read: “When Christ appears, who is our life.”
- “It is for these things that the wrath of God is coming on the sons of disobedience.” (3:6) The ULB, UDB, and many other modern versions have this reading. However, other modern versions read, “It is for these things that the wrath of God is coming.” If other versions exist in the general region, translators should consider using the reading found in those versions.
- “I sent him to you for this, that you might know the matters about us.” (4:8) The ULB, UDB, and most other modern versions have this reading. Some older versions read, “I sent him to you for this, that he might know the matters about you.”

(See: [Textual Variants](#))

### List of translationAcademy Topics in Colossians

- \* [Abstract Nouns](#) is found in: [03:12](#)
- \* [Active or Passive](#) is found in: [01:15](#), [01:21](#), [01:24](#), [02:01](#), [02:18](#), [03:01](#), [03:12](#)
- \* [Doublet](#) is found in: [02:01](#), [04:01](#)
- \* [Exclusive “We”](#) is found in: [01:01](#), [01:04](#), [01:07](#), [01:09](#), [01:11](#), [01:28](#), [04:02](#), [04:07](#)
- \* [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) is found in: [01:28](#), [03:09](#)
- \* [Hyperbole](#) is found in: [01:04](#)

- \* **Idiom** is found in: 02:04, 03:05, 03:12, 04:05
- \* **Inclusive “We”** is found in: 01:01
- \* **Metaphor** is found in: 01:04, 01:07, 01:09, 01:11, 01:13, 01:15, 01:18, 01:21, 01:24, 01:28, 02:01, 02:06, 02:08, 02:10, 02:13, 02:16, 02:18, 02:20, 03:01, 03:05, 03:09, 03:12, 03:15, 03:22, 04:02, 04:05, 04:07
- \* **Metonymy** is found in: 01:04, 01:18, 01:21, 02:04, 02:13, 02:18, 02:20, 03:01, 03:05, 03:09, 03:15, 04:02, 04:10, 04:18
- \* **Parallelism** is found in: 01:21
- \* **Pronouns** is found in: 02:01
- \* **Rhetorical Question** is found in: 02:20
- \* **Synecdoche** is found in: 02:01
- \* **Forms of You** is found in: 04:15
- \* **Translating Son and Father** is found in: 01:15, 01:18
- \* **How to Translate Names** is found in: 01:07
- \* **Connecting Words** is found in: 03:12

#### **List of translationWords in Colossians**

- \* **afflict, affliction** is found in: 01:24
- \* **angel, archangel** is found in: 02:18
- \* **apostle, apostleship** is found in: 01:01
- \* **authority** is found in: 01:15, 02:10, 02:13
- \* **baptize, baptism** is found in: 02:10
- \* **Barnabas** is found in: 04:10
- \* **believe, believe in, belief** is found in: 01:24
- \* **believer** is found in: 01:01
- \* **beloved** is found in: 03:12, 04:07
- \* **blameless** is found in: 01:21
- \* **blood** is found in: 01:18
- \* **brother** is found in: 01:01, 04:07
- \* **Christ, Messiah** is found in: 01:07, 01:24, 02:01, 02:16, 03:01, 03:15, 04:02
- \* **church, Church** is found in: 01:18, 01:24, 04:15
- \* **circumcise, circumcision** is found in: 02:10, 03:09, 04:10

- \* Colossae, Colossians is found in: 01:01
- \* create, creation, Creator is found in: 01:15, 01:21, 03:09
- \* cross is found in: 01:18, 02:13
- \* darkness is found in: 01:13
- \* death, die, dead is found in: 01:18, 01:21, 02:10, 02:13, 02:20, 03:05
- \* disobey, disobedient, disobedience is found in: 03:05
- \* dominion is found in: 01:13, 01:15
- \* chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect is found in: 03:12
- \* evil, wicked, wickedness is found in: 01:21
- \* faith is found in: 01:04, 01:21, 02:04, 02:10
- \* faithful, faithfulness is found in: 01:01, 01:07, 04:07
- \* fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh is found in: 03:22
- \* feast is found in: 02:16
- \* firstborn is found in: 01:15, 01:18
- \* flesh is found in: 01:24, 02:18, 02:20
- \* forgive, forgiveness is found in: 01:13, 02:13, 03:12
- \* sexual immorality is found in: 03:05
- \* fruit, fruitful is found in: 01:04
- \* Gentile is found in: 01:24
- \* glory, glorious is found in: 01:11, 01:24, 03:01
- \* God is found in: 01:01, 01:04, 01:09, 01:15, 01:18, 01:21, 01:24, 02:01, 02:10, 03:01, 04:02
- \* God the Father, heavenly Father, Father is found in: 01:01, 01:11, 03:15
- \* good, goodness is found in: 01:09
- \* good news, gospel is found in: 01:04, 01:21
- \* grace, gracious is found in: 01:01, 01:04, 04:05, 04:18
- \* Greek, Grecian is found in: 03:09
- \* head is found in: 01:18, 02:10, 02:18
- \* heart is found in: 03:15
- \* heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly is found in: 01:04, 01:15, 01:18, 01:21, 04:01
- \* holy, holiness is found in: 01:21, 03:12
- \* Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord is found in: 01:07

- \* house is found in: 04:15
- \* humble, humility is found in: 02:18
- \* idol, idolatrous is found in: 03:05
- \* image of God, image is found in: 01:15, 03:09
- \* in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him is found in: 02:06
- \* inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir is found in: 01:11, 03:22
- \* Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus is found in: 01:01, 01:04
- \* Jew, Jewish, Jews is found in: 03:09
- \* John Mark is found in: 04:10
- \* joy, joyful is found in: 01:11
- \* kingdom is found in: 01:13
- \* kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven is found in: 04:10
- \* know, knowledge, make known is found in: 02:01
- \* labor, laborer is found in: 01:28
- \* lord, master, sir is found in: 03:22, 04:01
- \* Lord is found in: 01:01, 01:09, 03:12, 04:15
- \* love is found in: 01:04, 01:07, 01:09, 02:01
- \* Luke is found in: 04:12
- \* mystery, hidden truth is found in: 04:02
- \* Paul, Saul is found in: 01:01, 01:21, 04:18
- \* peace, peaceful is found in: 01:01, 01:18, 03:15
- \* persevere, perseverance is found in: 01:11
- \* power, powers is found in: 01:11, 01:28, 02:10
- \* pray, prayer is found in: 01:01, 01:09, 01:11, 04:02, 04:12
- \* proclaim, proclamation is found in: 01:21, 01:28
- \* psalm is found in: 03:15
- \* raise, rise, risen, arise, arose is found in: 02:10, 03:01
- \* reconcile, reconciliation is found in: 01:18, 01:21
- \* redeem, redemption, redeemer is found in: 01:13
- \* rejoice is found in: 01:24, 02:04
- \* right hand is found in: 03:01

- \* **Sabbath** is found in: 02:16
- \* **servant, slave, slavery** is found in: 01:07, 01:21, 03:22, 04:01, 04:07, 04:12
- \* **serve, service** is found in: 01:24
- \* **sin, sinful, sinner, sinning** is found in: 01:13, 02:08, 02:10
- \* **Son of God, the Son, Son** is found in: 01:15, 01:18
- \* **spirit, spiritual** is found in: 01:09, 02:04
- \* **suffer, suffering** is found in: 01:24
- \* **throne** is found in: 01:15
- \* **Timothy** is found in: 01:01
- \* **tradition** is found in: 02:08
- \* **trespass** is found in: 02:13
- \* **true, truth, come true** is found in: 01:04, 01:24
- \* **Tychicus** is found in: 04:07
- \* **uncircumcised, uncircumcision** is found in: 02:13, 03:09
- \* **unclean** is found in: 03:05
- \* **unrighteous, unrighteousness** is found in: 03:22
- \* **walk** is found in: 02:06
- \* **will of God** is found in: 01:01, 04:12
- \* **wise, wisdom** is found in: 01:09, 01:28, 02:01, 02:20, 03:15, 04:05
- \* **witness, eyewitness** is found in: 04:12
- \* **word** is found in: 01:04, 04:02
- \* **worship** is found in: 02:18
- \* **worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless** is found in: 01:09

## Colossians 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

As a typically letter, this chapter begins (1:1-3) with a formal introduction to the Christians in Colossae.

A large part of this chapter revolves around two basic ideas. First, who Christ is. Second, what Christ has accomplish for the Christian.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Mystery

Paul refers to the church as a “mystery.” The role of the church in the plans of God was once unknown, but has now been revealed by God. Part of this mystery involve the Gentiles’ equal standing with the Jews in the current plans of God. (See: [reveal](#), [revelation](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Images for christian living

There are many different images used to describe christian living. In this chapter, two popular images are used by Paul. These are “walking” and “bearing fruit.” (See: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### The use of paradox

This is seemingly absurd statement, appearing to contradict itself. A paradox occurs in this chapter: Paul rejoices in his suffering. This is a counter-intuitive reaction to difficulties.

#### Links:

- [Colossians 01:01 Notes](#)
- [Introduction to Colossians](#)

## Colossians 1:1-3

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> I, Paul, write this to the dear fellow believers in the city of Colossae. This is from Paul, whom God chose to send to you as an apostle of Christ Jesus, and this letter is also from Timothy, our fellow believer joined to Christ. We are sending this letter to all of you. <sup>2</sup> We send this letter to those God has set apart for himself—those who are faithful believers who belong to Christ. We pray that God our Father will give you his kindness and peace.

<sup>3</sup> We often thank God, the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, while we are praying for you.

### ULB:

<sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus through the will of God, and Timothy our brother, <sup>2</sup> to the believers and faithful brothers in Christ who are at Colossae. May grace be to you, and peace from God our Father.[1]Some versions add, *and the Lord Jesus Christ*.

<sup>3</sup> We give thanks to God, the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, and we always pray for you.

### translationWords:

- Paul, Saul
- apostle, apostleship
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- will of God
- Timothy
- brother
- believer
- God
- faithful, faithfulness
- Colossae, Colossians
- grace, gracious
- peace, peaceful
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- Lord
- pray, prayer

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Though this letter is from Paul and Timothy to the Colossian believers, later in the letter Paul makes it clear that he is the writer. Most likely Timothy was with him and wrote the words down as Paul spoke.



- **General Information:** - Throughout this letter the words “we,” “our,” and “ours” include the Colossians unless noted otherwise. The words “you,” “your,” and “yours” refer to the Colossian believers and so are plural unless noted otherwise. (See: [Inclusive “We”](#) and [Forms of You](#))
- **an apostle of Christ Jesus through the will of God** - “whom God chose to be an apostle of Christ Jesus”
- **We give ... our Lord ... we always** - These words do not include the Colossians. (See: [Exclusive “We”](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 01 Translation Questions](#)

## Colossians 1:4-6

### UDB:

<sup>4</sup> We give God thanks because we have heard that you trust in Christ Jesus and that you love all those whom God has set apart for himself. <sup>5</sup> You love our fellow believers because you confidently are waiting for the things God is reserving for you in heaven. You first heard about these things when you heard the true message, the good news about Christ. <sup>6</sup> Believers are proclaiming this good news that you heard in Colossae to everyone in the world. It is just as it has worked in you also, from the first day you heard it and understood how truly kind God is. The good news is like a field planted with crops that are growing and will give a very large harvest.

### ULB:

<sup>4</sup> We have heard of your faith in Christ Jesus and of the love that you have for all those set apart for God. <sup>5</sup> You have this love because of the confident expectation reserved for you in heaven. You heard about this confident expectation before in the word of truth, the gospel, <sup>6</sup> which has come to you. This gospel is bearing fruit and is growing in all the world. It has been doing this in you also from the day you heard it and learned about the grace of God in truth.

### translationWords:

- faith
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- love
- God
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- word
- true, truth, come true
- good news, gospel
- fruit, fruitful
- grace, gracious

### translationNotes:

- **We have heard** - Paul is excluding his audience. (See: **Exclusive “We”**)
- **your faith in Christ Jesus** - “your belief in Christ Jesus”
- **because of the confident expectation reserved for you in heaven** - Here “confident expectation” stands for what the believer can confidently expect, that is, the things that God has promised to do for all believers. These things are spoken of as if they were physical objects that God was keeping in heaven for the believers to possess later. AT: “because you are certain that God, who is in heaven, will do the many good things that he has promised you” (See: **Metonymy**)

- **bearing fruit and is growing** - Paul is speaking here of the gospel as if it were a tree or plant that grows and produces food. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **in all the world** - The gospel is spreading and growing throughout the known world. (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **the grace of God in truth** - “the true grace of God”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 01 Translation Questions](#)

## Colossians 1:7-8

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> Epaphras taught you the good news. We love him because he serves Christ together with us and works for Christ faithfully in our place. <sup>8</sup> He told us that you love all God's people because God's Spirit has empowered you to love God and others.

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> This is the gospel as you learned it from Epaphras, our beloved fellow servant, who is a faithful servant of Christ on our behalf.[1]Some versions read, *on your behalf*. <sup>8</sup> Epaphras has made known to us your love in the Spirit.

### translationWords:

- [faithful, faithfulness](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [Christ, Messiah](#)
- [love](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord](#)

### translationNotes:

- **our beloved ... our behalf ... to us** - The words “our” and “us” do not include the Colossians. (See: [Exclusive “We”](#))
- **gospel as you learned it from Epaphras, our beloved fellow servant, who** - “gospel. It is exactly what you learned from Epaphras, who is our beloved fellow servant and who” or “gospel. It is exactly what Epaphras, our beloved fellow servant, taught you. He”
- **Epaphras, our beloved fellow servant, who is a faithful servant of Christ on our behalf** - Here “on our behalf” means that Epaphras was doing work for Christ that Paul himself would have done if he were not in prison.
- **Epaphras** - the man who preached the gospel to the people in Colossae (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **your love in the Spirit** - Paul speaks of the Holy Spirit as if he were a place in which the believers were located. AT: “how the Holy Spirit has enabled you to love believers” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 01 General Notes](#)

- Colossians 01 Translation Questions

## Colossians 1:9-10

### UDB:

<sup>9</sup> Since the time we heard about how you love, we have always been praying for you. We ask God to show you everything he wants you to do, and to make you wise so that you will understand what God's Spirit is teaching you. <sup>10</sup> We pray that you will live in a way that will help others honor the Lord also, so that he will approve of you. We pray that you will grow to understand God more and do every good thing that he tells you to do.

### ULB:

<sup>9</sup> Because of this love, from the day we heard this we have not stopped praying for you. We have been asking that you will be filled with the knowledge of his will in all wisdom and spiritual understanding. <sup>10</sup> We have been praying that you will walk worthily of the Lord in pleasing ways. We have been praying that you will bear fruit in every good deed and that you will grow in the knowledge of God.

### translationWords:

- love
- wise, wisdom
- spirit, spiritual
- worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless
- Lord
- pray, prayer
- good, goodness
- God

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Because the Spirit has enabled them to love others, Paul prays for them and tells them here how he prays for them.
- **Because of this love** - "Because the Holy Spirit has enabled you to love other believers"
- **we heard ... we have not stopped ... We have been asking ... We have been praying** - These words do not include the Colossians. (See: **Exclusive "We"**)
- **from the day we heard this** - "from the day Epaphras told us these things"
- **that you will be filled with the knowledge of his will** - Paul speaks of the Colossian believers as though they were containers. AT: "that God will fill you with what you need to know so that you can do his will" (See: **Metaphor**)
- **in all wisdom and spiritual understanding** - " , so that the Holy Spirit will make you wise and able to understand what God wants you to do"

- **that you will walk worthily of the Lord** - Walking here signifies behavior in life. AT: “that you will live the way God expects you to” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **in pleasing ways** - “in ways that will please the Lord”
- **will bear fruit** - Paul is speaking of the Colossian believers as if they were trees or plants. As a plant grows and bears fruit, so also believers are to keep getting to know God better and doing good deeds. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 01 Translation Questions](#)

## Colossians 1:11-12

### UDB:

<sup>11</sup> We pray that God will strengthen you with all his mighty power, so that you will patiently endure every difficulty. <sup>12</sup> We pray that you will be rejoicing and thanking God our Father, because he has declared you worthy to be with the others whom he has set apart for himself; this is so he can give you all the things that he is keeping for you when you are with him in the light of his presence.

### ULB:

<sup>11</sup> We pray you may be strengthened in every ability according to the power of his glory into all perseverance and patience. <sup>12</sup> We pray that you will joyfully give thanks to the Father, who has made you able to have a share in the inheritance of the believers in light.[1]Some versions read, *who has made us able to have a share.*

### translationWords:

- pray, prayer
- power, powers
- glory, glorious
- persevere, perseverance
- joy, joyful
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

### translationNotes:

- **We pray** - The word “we” refers to Paul and Timothy but not to the Colossians. (See: **Exclusive “We”**)
- **into all perseverance and patience** - Paul speaks of the Colossian believers as if God would move them into a location of perseverance and patience. In reality, he is praying that they will never stop trusting in God and that they will be completely patient as they honor him. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **has made you able to have a share** - “has allowed you to share”
- **has made you able** - Here Paul is focusing on his readers as receivers of God’s blessings. But he does not mean that he himself has no share in those blessings.
- **inheritance** - Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **in light** - This idea is opposite to the idea of the dominion of darkness in the next verse. AT: “in the glory of his presence” (See: **Metaphor**)



**Links:**

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 01 Translation Questions](#)

## Colossians 1:13-14

### UDB:

<sup>13</sup> God our Father has rescued us from the evil that controlled us; he has made his Son, whom he loves, to rule over us now. <sup>14</sup> By means of his Son he has set us free from that evil; that is, he has forgiven our sins.

### ULB:

<sup>13</sup> He has rescued us from the dominion of darkness and transferred us to the kingdom of his beloved Son. <sup>14</sup> In his Son we have redemption, the forgiveness of sins.[1]Some versions read, *In his Son we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins.*

### translationWords:

- [dominion](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [redeem, redemption, redeemer](#)
- [forgive, forgiveness](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul talks about the ways in which Christ is excellent.
- **He has rescued** - “God the Father has rescued”
- **the dominion of darkness** - Darkness is a common picture in the scriptures for evil. AT: “the power of evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **his beloved Son** - “God the Father’s beloved Son, Jesus Christ”
- **In his Son we have redemption** - Paul often speaks as if the believers were “in” Jesus Christ or “in” God. Here this expression can also be translated as “by means of his Son we have redemption.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the forgiveness of sins** - “; his Son forgives our sins” or “; the Father forgives us through his Son”

### Links:

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 01 Translation Questions](#)

## Colossians 1:15-17

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> When we know the Son, we know what God is like, even though we cannot see him. The Son has first place over everything that he has created. <sup>16</sup> For the Son created all things, as the Father desired him to do: everything in the sky and everything on earth, everything that we can see and everything that we cannot see, such as angelic beings of all kinds and powers and authorities. All things exist because the Son created them because the Father wanted him to. And they exist for him. <sup>17</sup> The Son himself existed before anything else, and he holds everything together.

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> The Son is the image of the invisible God. He is the firstborn of all creation. <sup>16</sup> For by him all things were created, those in the heavens and those on the earth, the visible and the invisible things. Whether thrones or dominions or governments or authorities, all things were created by him and for him. <sup>17</sup> He is before all things, and in him all things hold together.

### translationWords:

- Son of God, the Son, Son
- image of God, image
- God
- firstborn
- create, creation, Creator
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- throne
- dominion
- authority

### translationNotes:

- **The Son is the image of the invisible God** - Here “image” does not mean a representation of something that is visible. Instead, “image” here means that by knowing the Son, we learn what God the Father is like. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Son** - This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))
- **He is the firstborn** - “The Son is the firstborn.” The expression “firstborn Son” does not refer to Jesus’ birth in Bethlehem. Instead, it refers to the Son’s position as the eternal Son of God the Father. In this sense, “firstborn” is a metaphor meaning “most important.” Jesus is the most important and the unique “Son” of God. He is God. The word “Son” shows Jesus’ intimate relationship with the Father. That relationship cannot be understood until and unless you use your language’s words for “son” and “father.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **For by him all things were created** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Because the Son created all things” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Whether thrones or dominions or governments or authorities, all things were created by him and for him** - The Son created all things for himself, including thrones, dominions, principalities, and authorities. (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **He is before all things** - “He existed before all things”
- **in him all things hold together** - Paul is speaking here of the Son controlling all things as if he were physically holding them together. “he holds everything together” (UDB) (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 01 Translation Questions](#)

## Colossians 1:18-20

### UDB:

<sup>18</sup> He rules all believers—the church—like a person’s head rules his body. He rules over the church because he started it. He was the first person to come back to life with a perfect body. So he is greater than every thing. <sup>19</sup> God the Father was pleased to make everything he is to live in Christ. <sup>20</sup> It also pleased God to bring everything back to himself in peace through Jesus. God offered peace to all people and all things everywhere on earth and in heaven. He did this by causing the Son to die on the cross as a sacrifice, shedding his blood as he died.

### ULB:

<sup>18</sup> And he is the head of the body, the church. He is the beginning and the firstborn from among the dead, so he has first place among all things. <sup>19</sup> For God was pleased that all his fullness should live in him, <sup>20</sup> and to reconcile through the Son all things to himself. God made peace through the blood of his cross. God reconciled all things to himself, whether the things on the earth or the things in heaven.

### translationWords:

- head
- church, Church
- firstborn
- death, die, dead
- God
- reconcile, reconciliation
- Son of God, the Son, Son
- peace, peaceful
- blood
- cross
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

### translationNotes:

- **he is the head** - “Jesus Christ, the Son of God, is the head”
- **he is the head of the body, the church** - Paul speaks of Jesus’ position over the church as if he were the head on the human body. As the head rules the body, so does Jesus rule the church. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the beginning** - “the originating authority.” He is the first chief or founder.
- **firstborn from among the dead** - Jesus is the first person to die and come back to life, never to die again.

- **Son** - This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))
- **through the blood of his cross** - “by means of the blood Jesus shed on the cross”
- **the blood of his cross** - Here “blood” stands for the death of Christ on the cross. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 01 Translation Questions](#)

**Colossians 1:21-23****UDB:**

<sup>21</sup> Before you believed in Christ, God considered you his enemies, and you were unfriendly to God because you thought evil thoughts and because you did evil deeds. <sup>22</sup> But now God has offered peace between yourselves and himself and has made you his friends. He did this when Jesus gave up his body and life for us by dying. This made it possible for us to belong to God; he finds nothing wrong in us now, nothing to blame us for. <sup>23</sup> But you must continue to trust Christ completely; then you will be like a house that they built on solid rock. Do not for any reason stop believing in what God has promised to do for you in the good news that people all over the world have heard. This is the same good news that I, Paul, am serving God by proclaiming to people.

**ULB:**

<sup>21</sup> And you also, at one time, were strangers to God and were his enemies in mind and in evil deeds. <sup>22</sup> But now he has reconciled you by his physical body through death. He did this in order to present you holy, blameless, and above reproach before him, <sup>23</sup> if you continue in the faith, established and firm, not moved away from the confident expectation of the gospel that you heard. This is the gospel that was proclaimed to every person created under heaven. This is the gospel of which I, Paul, became a servant.

**translationWords:**

- God
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- reconcile, reconciliation
- death, die, dead
- holy, holiness
- blameless
- faith
- good news, gospel
- proclaim, proclamation
- create, creation, Creator
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Paul, Saul
- servant, slave, slavery

**translationNotes:**

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul makes it clear that God has now revealed that Christ exchanges the sin of Gentile believers for his holiness.

- **And you also** - “And you Colossian believers also”
- **were strangers to God** - “were like people whom God did not know” or “had pushed God away”
- **to present you holy, blameless, and above reproach before him** - Paul is describing the Colossians as though Jesus had physically cleaned them, put them in clean clothes, and brought them to stand before God the Father. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **blameless, and above reproach** - Paul uses two words that mean almost the same thing to emphasize the idea of perfection. AT: “perfect” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **before him** - This expression of location stands for “in God’s view” or “in God’s mind” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **that was proclaimed** - that believers proclaimed (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **to every person created under heaven** - “to every person in the world”
- **the gospel of which I, Paul, became a servant** - Paul was actually a servant of God. AT: “the gospel that I, Paul, serve God by proclaiming” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 01 Translation Questions](#)



## Colossians 1:24-27

### UDB:

<sup>24</sup> Now I rejoice that I am suffering for your benefit. Yes, in order to help the church, which is like Christ's body, I suffer things that must still happen. <sup>25</sup> God made me his servant and gave to me special work to do, which is to proclaim the full message of God to non-Jewish people like you. <sup>26</sup> From ancient times, for generations, God did not tell this good news, but now he has revealed this mystery to those whom he has set apart for himself. <sup>27</sup> It is to these people—Jews and non-Jews like yourselves just as much—that God planned to tell this wonderful secret. It is this: Christ will live in you and make you confidently expect to share in God's glory!

### ULB:

<sup>24</sup> Now I rejoice in my sufferings for you. And I fill up in my flesh what is lacking of the afflictions of Christ for the sake of his body, which is the church. <sup>25</sup> It is of this church that I am a servant, according to the responsibility from God that was given to me for you, to fulfill the word of God. <sup>26</sup> This is the secret truth that was hidden for ages and for generations. But now it has been revealed to those who believe in him. <sup>27</sup> It is to them that God wanted to make known the riches of the glory of this secret truth among the Gentiles. It is that Christ is in you, the confidence of future glory.

### translationWords:

- rejoice
- suffer, suffering
- flesh
- afflict, affliction
- Christ, Messiah
- church, Church
- serve, service
- God
- true, truth, come true
- believe, believe in, belief
- glory, glorious
- Gentile

### translationNotes:

- **I fill up in my flesh what is lacking of the afflictions of Christ** - Paul speaks about the suffering that he continues to experience. He may be acknowledging here that there is much suffering that he and all other Christians must endure before Christ comes again, and that Christ in a spiritual sense joins with them in experiencing these hardships. Paul certainly

does not mean that Christ's sufferings alone were not enough to provide salvation for the believers.

- **I fill up in my flesh** - Paul speaks of his body as if it were a container that could hold suffering. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **for the sake of his body, which is the church** - Paul often speaks of the church, the group of all Christian believers, as if it were Christ's body. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **to fulfill the word of God** - This means to bring about the purpose of God's gospel message, which is that it be preached and believed. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **This is the secret truth that was hidden** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "This is the secret truth that God had hidden" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **for ages and for generations** - The words "ages" and "generations" refer to the time period from the creation of the world until the time when the gospel was preached.
- **now it has been revealed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "now God has revealed it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the riches of the glory of this secret truth** - Paul speaks of the value of this secret truth about God as if it were a treasure of material wealth. "riches" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Christ is in you** - Paul speaks of the believers as if they were actual containers in which Christ is present. This is one of his ways of expressing the union of the believers with Christ. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the confidence of future glory** - "so you can confidently expect to share in God's glory" (see UDB)

#### Links:

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 01 Translation Questions](#)

## Colossians 1:28-29

### UDB:

<sup>28</sup> We are wisely warning and teaching every person about Christ so that we might bring into God's presence each one as knowing God completely, joined to Christ. <sup>29</sup> It is to do this that I work my hardest, because Christ is giving me strength.

### ULB:

<sup>28</sup> This is he whom we proclaim. We admonish every person, and we teach every person with all wisdom, so that we may present every person complete in Christ. <sup>29</sup> For this I labor and strive according to his energy that is at work in me in power.

### translationWords:

- [proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [labor, laborer](#)
- [power, powers](#)

### translationNotes:

- **we proclaim ... We admonish ... we teach ... we may present** - These words do not include the Colossians. (See: [Exclusive "We"](#))
- **We admonish every person** - "We warn everyone"
- **so that we may present every person** - "so that we may present to God every person" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **complete** - "spiritually mature" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 01 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 01 Translation Questions](#)

## Colossians 2 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Worldliness

Although believers must live in the world, Paul encourage the Christians in Colossae not to live “worldly” lives. By this, he means not to live as the non-Chrsitians do.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Flesh

This is a complex issue and it is possible “flesh” is a metaphor for a person’s sinful nature. It is not the physical part of man that is sinful and it appears Paul is teaching that while man remains alive (“in the flesh”), he will remain sinful regardless of his effort, but his new nature will be fighting against his old nature. Flesh is also used in this chapter to refer to the material part of man in general.

#### Implicit Information

There are several issues mentioned in this chapter that share implicit information about the context of the church in Colossae. It is best to allow uncertainty to remain in the text over the specifics of the situations referenced. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Links:

- [Colossians 02:01 Notes](#)

## Colossians 2:1-3

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> I want you to realize that I am doing my best to help you and those in Laodicea, and also the believers who have never seen me personally. <sup>2</sup> I do this so that I might encourage them and you yourselves to love each other and unite yourselves together. I desire that you all confidently and completely understand this secret truth about God and that this truth is Christ! <sup>3</sup> It is only by means of Christ that we can know what God is thinking and how wise he is.

### ULB:

<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup> For I want you to know how great a struggle I have had for you, for those at Laodicea, and for as many as have not seen my face in the flesh. <sup>2</sup> I work so that their hearts may be encouraged by being brought together in love and into all the riches of full assurance of understanding, into the knowledge of the secret truth of God, that is, Christ. <sup>3</sup> In him all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge are hidden.

### translationWords:

- love
- God
- Christ, Messiah
- wise, wisdom
- know, knowledge, make known

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul continues to encourage the believers in Colossae and Laodicea to understand that Christ is God and that he lives in believers, so they should live in the same way they received him.
- **how great a struggle I have had for you** - Paul has exerted much effort in developing their purity and understanding of the gospel.
- **those at Laodicea** - This was a city very close to Colossae where there was also a church for which Paul was praying.
- **as many as have not seen my face in the flesh** - Here “face in the flesh” stands for the person. AT: “all those whom I have never seen personally” or “all those whom I have never met face to face” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **so that their hearts** - Paul includes the Galatians even though he uses a different pronoun. AT: “so that their hearts and yours” (See: [Pronouns](#))
- **brought together** - This means brought together in a close relationship.

- **all the riches of full assurance of understanding** - Paul speaks of a person who is completely sure that the good news is true as though that person were rich in physical things. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the secret truth of God** - This is knowledge that can be revealed only by God.
- **that is, Christ** - Jesus Christ is the secret truth revealed by God.
- **In him all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge are hidden** - Only Christ can reveal God's true wisdom and knowledge. This can be stated in active form. AT: "God has hidden all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge in Christ" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the treasures of wisdom and knowledge** - Paul speaks of God's wisdom and knowledge as if they were material wealth. AT: "the very precious wisdom and knowledge" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **wisdom and knowledge** - These words mean basically the same thing here. Paul uses them together to emphasize that all spiritual understanding comes from Christ. (See: [Doublet](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 02 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 02 Translation Questions](#)

## Colossians 2:4-5

### UDB:

<sup>4</sup> I am telling you this in order that no one may deceive you. <sup>5</sup> Even though I am absent from you physically, I am very much concerned about you, just as if I were indeed with you. Yet I am rejoicing because I know that you follow Christ in a way that no one can stop you, that you trust in Christ without giving up.

### ULB:

<sup>4</sup> I say this so that no one may trick you with persuasive speech. <sup>5</sup> And although I am not with you in the flesh, yet I am with you in spirit. I rejoice to see your good order and the strength of your faith in Christ.

### translationWords:

- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [rejoice](#)
- [faith](#)

### translationNotes:

- **trick** - This means to cause someone to believe something that is not true, so he acts on that belief, and suffers harm as a result.
- **persuasive speech** - speech that will make a person think differently
- **not with you in the flesh** - “not physically present with you” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **I am with you in spirit** - “I continually think about you” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **good order** - doing things properly
- **the strength of your faith** - “how nothing and no one can cause you to stop believing”

### Links:

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 02 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 02 Translation Questions](#)

## Colossians 2:6-7

### UDB:

<sup>6</sup> You began to believe in Christ Jesus the Lord by trusting in him, so also live by trusting him. <sup>7</sup> You should rely completely on Christ Jesus the Lord, just like a tree spreads its roots deep into the ground. You learned to trust Christ very much in this way, like men build a house on a good foundation. And you should always give thanks to God.

### ULB:

<sup>6</sup> As you received Christ the Lord, walk in him. <sup>7</sup> Be firmly planted in him, be built on him, be established in faith just as you were taught, and abound in thanksgiving.

### translationWords:

- [walk](#)
- [in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Be firmly planted ... be built ... be established ... abound** - These words explain what it means to “walk in him.”
- **Be firmly planted in him** - Paul speaks of a person with true faith in Christ as if that person were a tree growing in solid ground with deep roots. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **be built on him** - Paul speaks of a person with true faith in Christ as if that person were a building that has a strong foundation. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **be established in faith** - “trust in Jesus for everything”
- **just as you were taught** - This is best stated without naming or otherwise calling attention to the teacher, who was Epaphras ([1:7](#)). AT: “just as you learned” or “just as they taught you” or “just as he taught you”
- **abound in thanksgiving** - Paul speaks of thanksgiving as if it were objects that a person could obtain more of. AT: “be very thankful to God” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 02 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 02 Translation Questions](#)



## Colossians 2:8-9

### UDB:

<sup>8</sup> Do not believe anyone who says that you must obey what people have taught about how to honor God or that you must obey what they worship in this world. Instead, obey Christ, <sup>9</sup> because the man Jesus Christ is fully God.

### ULB:

<sup>8</sup> See that no one captures you through the philosophy and the empty deceit according to the tradition of men, conforming to the elements of the world, and not conforming to Christ. <sup>9</sup> For in him lives all the fullness of God bodily.

### translationWords:

- [tradition](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul urges the believers to be careful not to turn to the words and rules of others because nothing can add to the fullness of God that believers have in Christ.
- **See that** - “Make sure that”
- **captures you** - Paul speaks of the way a person can believe false teachings (because they believe false things or love the wrong things) as if someone had physically caught and held that person by force. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **philosophy** - religious doctrines and beliefs that are not from God’s word but are based on man’s thoughts about God and life
- **empty deceit** - Paul speaks of false ideas that produce nothing and so are without value as though they are containers with nothing in them. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the tradition of men ... the elements of the world** - Both Jewish traditions and pagan (Gentile) belief systems are worthless. “The elements of the world” perhaps refers to evil spirits that claimed to rule the world and that were adored by people. But some interpreters view “the elements of the world” as people’s basic teachings about the world.
- **in him lives all the fullness of God bodily** - “God’s total nature lives in physical form in Christ”

### Links:

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)

- Colossians 02 General Notes
- Colossians 02 Translation Questions

## Colossians 2:10-12

### UDB:

<sup>10</sup> Now God has given you everything you need because he has joined you to Christ, and he rules over every other person, spirit, and angel. <sup>11</sup> It is as if God has also circumcised you. But this was not as though a piece of human being cut flesh from your body. Instead, Jesus took away the power of sin that was within you, and this “circumcision” is the one that Christ does when he conquered your sinful nature and took it away from you. <sup>12</sup> Because they have baptized you, God considers that when men buried Christ, they buried you along with him. He considers that when he made Christ come alive again, he made you come alive also, because you trusted that he could make you live again.

### ULB:

<sup>10</sup> And you are filled in him. He is the head of every power and authority. <sup>11</sup> In him you were also circumcised with a circumcision not done by humans in the removal of the body of flesh, but in the circumcision of Christ. <sup>12</sup> You were buried with him in baptism. And in him you were raised up through faith in the power of God, who raised him from the dead ones.

### translationWords:

- head
- authority
- circumcise, circumcision
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- baptize, baptism
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- faith
- power, powers
- God
- death, die, dead

### translationNotes:

- **In him you were also circumcised** - Paul is speaking of those who belong to Christ as if they were inside Christ’s body. This can also be made active. AT: “When you joined the church in baptism, God circumcised you” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **you are filled in him** - Paul speaks of people as though they were containers into which God has placed Christ. AT: “you are made complete in Christ” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **He is the head** - Christ is the ruler (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **a circumcision not done by humans** - With this metaphor, Paul says that God has made Christian believers acceptable to himself in a way that reminded him of circumcision, the ceremony through which Hebrew male babies were added to the community of Israel. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **You were buried with him in baptism** - Paul speaks of being baptized and joining the assembly of believers as if it were being buried with Christ. This can be made active. AT: “God buried you with Christ when you joined the church in baptism” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **in him you were raised up** - With this metaphor, Paul speaks of the new spiritual life of believers, made possible because God made Christ come alive again. This can be made active. AT: “because you have joined yourself to Christ, God raised you up” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 02 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 02 Translation Questions](#)

## Colossians 2:13-15

### UDB:

<sup>13</sup> God viewed you as being dead, because you were sinning against him, and because you were not Jews, so you did not worship him. But he made you come alive together with Christ; he forgave us of all our sins. <sup>14</sup> We have all sinned so much, but God has forgiven our sins. It is like a man might forgive people who owe him money, so he tears up the papers they signed when he loaned them the money. But as for God, it is as if he had nailed those papers on which he had written all our sins and all the laws that we had broken to the cross on which Christ died. <sup>15</sup> Moreover, God defeated the evil spirit beings who rule people in this world, and he let everybody know that he had defeated them. It was just as if he had paraded them around in the streets as prisoners.

### ULB:

<sup>13</sup> And when you were dead in your trespasses and in the uncircumcision of your flesh, he made you alive together with him and forgave us all of our trespasses.[1]Some older versions read, *and forgave you all of your trespasses.* <sup>14</sup> He erased the written record of debts and the regulations that were against us. He removed it all and nailed it to the cross. <sup>15</sup> He disarmed the powers and authorities, he made a public spectacle of them, being victorious over them by the cross.

### translationWords:

- death, die, dead
- trespass
- uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- forgive, forgiveness
- cross
- authority

### translationNotes:

- **when you were dead** - Paul speaks of unresponsiveness to God as if it were death. AT: “when you Colossian believers were unable to respond to God” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **you were dead ... he made you alive** - With this metaphor Paul speaks of coming into new spiritual life as if it were coming back to life physically. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **dead in your trespasses and in the uncircumcision of your flesh** - You were dead on two accounts: 1) you were spiritually dead, living a life of sin against Christ and 2) you were not circumcised according to the law of Moses.
- **forgave us all of our trespasses** - “he forgave us, both us Jews and you Gentiles, of all our trespasses”

- **He erased the written record of debts and the regulations that were against us** - Paul speaks of the way God forgives our sins as if it were the way a person, to whom many people owe money or goods, destroys the record of that debt so they do not have to pay him back. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **he made a public spectacle of them** - In Roman times, it was common practice for the Roman armies to have a victory parade when they returned home, displaying all the prisoners they had captured and goods they had obtained. God was victorious over the evil powers and authorities. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **by the cross** - Here “the cross” stands for Christ’s death on the cross. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 02 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 02 Translation Questions](#)

## Colossians 2:16-17

### UDB:

<sup>16</sup> So disregard anyone who says that God will punish you because you eat certain foods and drink certain drinks or because you do not celebrate special yearly festivals or when the new moon appears or weekly Sabbaths. <sup>17</sup> These kinds of rules and events only picture what is truly coming. What is truly coming is Christ himself.

### ULB:

<sup>16</sup> So then, let no one judge you in eating or in drinking, or about a feast day or a new moon, or about Sabbath days. <sup>17</sup> These are a shadow of the things to come, but the substance is Christ.

### translationWords:

- [feast](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [Christ, Messiah](#)

### translationNotes:

- **in eating or in drinking** - The law of Moses included what one can eat and drink. “for what you eat or what you drink”
- **about a feast day or a new moon, or about Sabbath days** - The law of Moses specified the days to celebrate, to worship, and to offer sacrifice. “for the way you celebrate feast days or new moons or the Sabbath”
- **a shadow of the things to come** - A shadow gives only a vague idea of the shape and nature of an object. In a similar way, religious traditions such as the law of Moses can only partially show the reality of Jesus Christ. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the substance** - Here this means “the reality,” the thing that casts the “shadow.”

### Links:

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 02 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 02 Translation Questions](#)

## Colossians 2:18-19

### UDB:

<sup>18</sup> Those same people pretend to be humble, and they love to worship angels. Do not let them convince you to do the same. If you do, you will lose what Christ has promised you. These people are always talking about visions they say God has made them see. They boast about these things because they think like people everywhere think who do not honor God. <sup>19</sup> Such persons are not joined to Christ. Christ is the head of the body, and that body is all those who believe in him. The whole body depends upon the head. The head takes care of each part and puts together all the bones and ligaments so they work together, and it is God who makes it grow.

### ULB:

<sup>18</sup> Let no one who wants humility and the worship of angels judge you out of your prize. Such a person enters into the things he has seen and becomes puffed up by his fleshly thinking. <sup>19</sup> He does not hold on to the head. It is from the head that the whole body throughout its joints and ligaments is supplied and held together; it grows with the growth given by God.

### translationWords:

- humble, humility
- worship
- angel, archangel
- flesh
- head

### translationNotes:

- **Let no one ... judge you out of your prize** - Here Paul refers to false teachers as if they were corrupt judges at an athletic contest who would unjustly disqualify the believers from winning the prizes they deserve, and he speaks of Christ saving a person as if Christ were giving a prize to the winner of such a contest. AT: “Let no one ... disqualify you from winning a prize” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **who wants humility** - The word “humility” is a metonym for actions one does to make others think that one is humble. AT: “who wants you to do things to show that you are humble” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **enters into the things he has seen** - Here Paul speaks about people who claim to have dreams and visions from God and who talk proudly about them. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **becomes puffed up by his fleshly thinking** - Here Paul says that sinful ways of thinking make a person arrogant. AT: “puffs himself up by means of his fleshly thinking” (See: [Active or Passive](#))



- **puffed up** - Here a person who boasts is spoken of as if he were an object into which someone had blown air to make it larger than it should be. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **his fleshly thinking** - Here the idea of flesh stands for the sinful human nature. “the sinful thoughts he naturally thinks” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **He does not hold on to** - Paul speaks of trusting Christ as though one were grasping Christ with one’s hands. AT: “He does not firmly grasp” or “He does not cling to,” just as a child firmly holds on to his parent. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **It is from the head that the whole body throughout its joints and ligaments is supplied and held together** - Paul speaks of the church, which is ruled and empowered by Christ, as if it were a human body. “It is from the head that God supplies the whole body throughout its joints and ligaments and holds it together” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 02 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 02 Translation Questions](#)

## Colossians 2:20-23

### UDB:

<sup>20</sup> God considers that you died with Christ when he died. So now the spirits and all the rules that people make for how to please God—none of these things rule you anymore. So why are you still living as if these things were real? Why do you still obey those things? <sup>21</sup> These rules are such as: “Do not handle certain things. Do not taste certain things. Do not touch certain things.” Do not think you still have to obey such regulations. <sup>22</sup> These rules are all about things that perish in this world as people use them, and they were made up and taught by men, not by God. <sup>23</sup> These rules may seem to be good. But people made them because they were trying to honor God in their own way. That is why those people often look so humble; that is why they often hurt their own bodies. But if we obey these rules, we do not really stop wanting to sin.

### ULB:

<sup>20</sup> If you died together with Christ to the elements of the world, why do you live as obligated to the world: <sup>21</sup> “Do not handle, nor taste, nor touch”? <sup>22</sup> All these things are destined for corruption with use, according to the instructions and teachings of men. <sup>23</sup> These rules have the wisdom of self-made religion and humility and severity of the body. But they have no value against the indulgence of the flesh.

### translationWords:

- death, die, dead
- wise, wisdom
- flesh

### translationNotes:

- **If you died together with Christ to the elements of the world** - With this metaphor, Paul speaks of a believer as a person who is spiritually united with Christ: as Christ died, so the believer has spiritually died; as Christ has come back to life, so the believer has come back to spiritual life, that is, to responsiveness to God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **why do you live as obligated to the world: “Do ... touch”?** - Paul used this question to rebuke the Colossians for following the false beliefs of the world. AT: “stop submitting to the world’s beliefs! Stop believing them when they say, ‘Do ... touch!’” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **live as obligated to the world** - “think you must obey the desires of the world”
- **the world** - the thoughts, desires, and assumptions of the sinful majority of the world’s people (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **are destined for corruption** - “perish.” Paul uses a metaphor here of a body rotting (“corrupting”) in the grave. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **These rules have the wisdom of self-made religion and humility and severity of the body**  
- “These rules seem wise to unbelieving people because they allow those who follow them to appear humble because they hurt their own bodies”
- **have no value against the indulgence of the flesh** - “do not help you stop following your human desires”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 02 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 02 Translation Questions](#)

## Colossians 3 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The second part of this chapter parallels Ephesians 5 and 6.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Old and new self

The old and new self are concepts equivalent to the old/new man. The term “old man” probably refers to the sinful nature a person is born with, while the “new man” is the new nature or new life that is given to a person after they come to faith in Christ. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [faith](#)).

#### Character

Many of the qualities Paul encourages his readers to pursue (or avoid) are not actions themselves as much as they are character qualities. Because of this, they may present difficulties in translation. (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### “That which is above”

God is often pictured as being located above. When Paul says here to seek the things above or to think about what is above, he is implying Christians should seek to please God with their actions.

#### Links:

- [Colossians 03:01 Notes](#)

## Colossians 3:1-4

### UDB:

<sup>1</sup> God considers that he made you alive again when he made Christ alive after he died. And Christ is in heaven and is sitting at God's right side, the place for the person of greatest honor and power. You also should try to live here as if you were already there. <sup>2</sup> Desire what Jesus is keeping in heaven to give you; do not desire the things here on earth. <sup>3</sup> For God considers that you have died and no longer belong to this world. He considers that he has hidden you with Christ to keep you safe. <sup>4</sup> When God reveals Christ to everyone on earth in his shining light, then he will also reveal you in that same light, because Christ makes you live!

### ULB:

**3** <sup>1</sup> If then God has raised you with Christ, seek the things above, where Christ is sitting at the right hand of God. <sup>2</sup> Think about the things above, not about the things on earth. <sup>3</sup> For you have died, and your life is hidden with Christ in God. <sup>4</sup> When Christ appears, who is your life, then you will also appear with him in glory.[1]Some versions read, *When Christ appears, who is our life, then you will also appear with him in glory.*

### translationWords:

- God
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- Christ, Messiah
- right hand
- glory, glorious

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul warns the believers that because they are one with Christ, they ought not do certain things.
- **God has raised you with Christ** - As God has raised Christ to heaven, so God counts the believers in Colossae as though he has also raised them to heaven. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **things above** - "things in heaven"
- **For you have died** - As Christ actually died, so God counts the Colossian believers as having died with Christ. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **your life is hidden with Christ in God** - Paul speaks of people's lives as if they were objects that can be hidden in containers and speaks of God as if he were a container. AT: Possible meanings are 1) "it is as though God has taken your life and concealed it with Christ in God's

presence” or 2) “only God knows what your true life really is, and he will reveal it when he reveals Christ” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metaphor](#))

- **who is your life** - Christ is the one who gives spiritual life to the believer. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 03 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 03 Translation Questions](#)

## Colossians 3:5-8

### UDB:

<sup>5</sup> Therefore, think of the desires you have to do evil things in this world as enemies that must die. You must execute them: Do not try to do sexually immoral or impure acts. Do not think in lustful or evil ways. And do not be greedy, because that is the same as worshiping idols. <sup>6</sup> It is because people do things like these that God is angry with them and will punish them, for they do not obey him. <sup>7</sup> You yourselves also formerly lived like that when you were participating with those who behaved like that. <sup>8</sup> But now you must stop doing these things. Do not be angry at each other; do not try to make trouble for each other. Do not insult each other or talk in shameful, disgusting ways.

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> Put to death, then, the members that are on earth—sexual immorality, uncleanness, passion, evil desire, and greed, which is idolatry. <sup>6</sup> It is for these things that the wrath of God is coming on the sons of disobedience.[1]Some versions read, *It is for these things that the wrath of God is coming.* <sup>7</sup> It is in these things that you also once walked when you lived in them. <sup>8</sup> But now you must get rid of all these things—wrath, anger, evil intentions, insults, and obscene speech from your mouth.

### translationWords:

- death, die, dead
- sexual immorality
- unclean
- idol, idolatrous
- disobey, disobedient, disobedience

### translationNotes:

- **Put to death, then, the members that are on earth** - Paul speaks of sinful desires as though they were the body parts people use to satisfy them. (See: **Metaphor** and **Metonymy**)
- **uncleanness** - “impure behavior”
- **passion** - “strong, lustful desire”
- **and greed, which is idolatry** - “and greed, which is the same thing as idolatry” or “and do not be greedy because that is the same as worshiping idols” (UDB)
- **wrath of God** - God’s anger against those who do evil as shown by what he does to punish them.
- **the sons of disobedience** - “disobedient humanity” or “people who disobey him” (See: **Idiom** and **Abstract Nouns**)

- **It is in these things that you also once walked** - Paul speaks of the way a person behaves as if it were a road or path a person walks on. AT: “These are the things you used to do” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **when you lived in them** - Possible meanings are 1) “when you practiced these things” or 2) “when you lived among the people who disobey God” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **wrath, anger** - The word “wrath” here refers to when a person is angry at those who displease him as shown by his actions, which harm people.
- **anger** - very strong anger
- **evil intentions** - “desire to do wicked deeds”
- **insults** - speech used to hurt others
- **obscene speech** - words that do not belong in polite conversation
- **from your mouth** - Here “mouth” is a metonym for talk. “in your talk” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 03 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 03 Translation Questions](#)



## Colossians 3:9-11

### UDB:

<sup>9</sup> And do not lie to one another. Do not do any of these things, because you have become a new person now, a person who does not do these evil things any more. <sup>10</sup> You are a new person, and God is always making you to know him better and better and to be like him, as he created you to be. <sup>11</sup> God has made us into new persons joined to Christ, and he is always making us new. So it is no longer important whether anyone is a non-Jew or a Jew, or whether anyone is circumcised or is not circumcised, or whether anyone is a foreigner, or even uncivilized, or whether anyone is a slave or not a slave. But instead what is important is Christ, who is all things in all of you.

### ULB:

<sup>9</sup> Do not lie to one another, since you have taken off the old man with its practices, <sup>10</sup> and you have put on the new man that is being made new in knowledge according to the image of the one who created it. <sup>11</sup> This is where there is no Greek and Jew, circumcision and uncircumcision, barbarian, Scythian, slave, freeman, but Christ is all, and is in all.

### translationWords:

- image of God, image
- create, creation, Creator
- Greek, Grecian
- Jew, Jewish, Jews
- circumcise, circumcision
- uncircumcised, uncircumcision

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul continues to tell the believers how to live and reminds them that Christians should treat everyone according to the same standard.
- **you have taken off the old man with its practices, and you have put on the new man** - Here Paul is speaking of a Christian's rejecting his old sinful life as if it were an old garment that he takes off in order to put on a new garment. It was very common for Israelites such as Paul to speak of moral qualities as if they were pieces of clothing. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **the image** - This refers to Jesus Christ. (See: **Metonymy**)
- **there is no Greek and Jew, circumcision and uncircumcision, barbarian, Scythian, slave, freeman** - These terms are examples of the categories of people that Paul says do not matter for God. God sees every person alike, not by race, religion, nationality, or social status. AT: "race, religion, culture, and social status do not matter" (See: **Metonymy**)
- **barbarian** - a foreigner who does not know local customs

- **Scythian** - This is someone from the land of Scythia, which was outside the Roman Empire. Greeks and Romans used this word for someone who grew up in a place where everyone did wicked things all the time.
- **Christ is all, and is in all** - Nothing is excluded or left out of the rule of Christ. AT: “Christ is all important and lives in all his people” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 03 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 03 Translation Questions](#)

## Colossians 3:12-14

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> Because God has chosen you and set you apart as his people, and because he loves you, serve others compassionately and mercifully and with kindness. Humbly and gently care for one another with patience <sup>13</sup> and bear with each other. If anyone complains against someone else, forgive one another. Just as the Lord Jesus has forgiven you, so also you must forgive each other. <sup>14</sup> And what is most important is to love one another, because by doing that you will tie yourselves together perfectly.

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> Put on, then, as God's chosen ones, holy and beloved, intestines of mercy, kindness, lowliness, meekness, and patience. <sup>13</sup> Bear with one another. Be gracious to each other. If someone has a complaint against someone else, forgive in the same way that the Lord has forgiven you. <sup>14</sup> Above all these things, have love, which is the bond of perfection.

### translationWords:

- chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect
- holy, holiness
- beloved
- forgive, forgiveness
- Lord

### translationNotes:

- **Put on ... intestines of mercy** - As a person puts on clothing when getting dressed, believers are to show mercy and other moral qualities in their behavior toward each other. The lower intestines were often thought to be the center of emotions of mercy and compassion. Translators will probably have to change this figure of speech in their versions. AT: "Be merciful at all times" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Biblical Imagery - Man-made Objects](#))
- **then** - "Because what I have just said is true" (See: [Connecting Words](#))
- **as God's chosen ones, holy and beloved** - This can be made active. AT: "as those whom God has chosen for himself, whom he desires to see live for him alone, and whom he loves" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **kindness** - "goodness" or "gentleness"
- **lowliness** - "humbleness of mind" or "lowliness of mind"
- **meekness** - "gentleness"
- **Bear with one another** - "Do not allow yourselves to quickly become angry with one another" or "Accept each other even when you disappoint each other" (See: [Idiom](#))

- **Be gracious to each other** - “Treat each other better than they deserve for you to treat them”
- **has a complaint against** - “complains against” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **which is the bond of perfection** - “which binds us together perfectly”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 03 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 03 Translation Questions](#)

## Colossians 3:15-17

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> Christ is the one who makes you to live in peace with God and one another, so always behave so as to remain at peace. This is why he has called you to be together. And always thank God for everything. <sup>16</sup> As you live and serve God, always obey together what Christ has taught you. Teach and instruct each other with wisdom; praise and thank God sincerely as you sing psalms, hymns, and songs that honor him.

<sup>17</sup> Whatever you say, and whatever you do, do it all to honor the Lord Jesus, and do it while you give thanks to God for what Christ has done for you.

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> Let the peace of Christ rule in your hearts. It was for this peace that you were called in one body. And be thankful. <sup>16</sup> Let the word of Christ live in you richly. With all wisdom teach and admonish one another with psalms and hymns and spiritual songs. Sing with thankfulness in your hearts to God. <sup>17</sup> And whatever you do, in word or in deed, do all in the name of the Lord Jesus. Give thanks to God the Father through him.

### translationWords:

- peace, peaceful
- Christ, Messiah
- heart
- wise, wisdom
- psalm
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

### translationNotes:

- **Let the peace of Christ rule in your hearts** - Paul speaks of the peace that Christ gives as if it were a ruler. Possible meanings are 1) “Do everything so that you can have peaceful relationships with each other” or 2) “Allow God to give you peace in your heart” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **in your hearts** - It was normal for Paul to speak of the heart as if it were the place where people feel most intensely certain conditions such as peacefulness. You should use the most natural expression in your language for feeling at peace. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **Let the word of Christ live in you** - Paul speaks of Christ’s word as if it were a person capable of living inside other people. “Always trust Christ’s promises” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **admonish one another** - “caution and encourage one another”
- **with psalms and hymns and spiritual songs** - “with all sorts of songs to praise God”
- **thankfulness in your hearts** - “thankful hearts”

- **in word or in deed** - speaking or acting
- **in the name of the Lord Jesus** - “to honor the Lord Jesus” or “with the authority of the Lord Jesus”
- **through him** - Possible meanings are 1) because he has done great deeds or 2) because he has made it possible for people to speak to God and so give him thanks. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 03 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 03 Translation Questions](#)

**Colossians 3:18-21****UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> Wives, obey your husbands; this is right and according to what the Lord Jesus has commanded.

<sup>19</sup> Husbands, love your wives and do not be harsh with them.

<sup>20</sup> Children, obey your parents in every way, because the Lord God is pleased when you do that. <sup>21</sup> Fathers, do not cause anger in your children, so they do not become discouraged.

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> Wives, submit to your husbands, as it is appropriate in the Lord. <sup>19</sup> Husbands, love your wives, and do not be bitter against them. <sup>20</sup> Children, obey your parents in all things, for this is pleasing in the Lord. <sup>21</sup> Fathers, do not provoke your children, so that they will not be discouraged.

**translationWords:****translationNotes:**

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul then gives some special instructions to wives, husbands, children, fathers, slaves, and masters.
- **Wives, submit to** - “Wives, obey”
- **it is appropriate** - “it is proper” or “it is right”
- **do not be bitter against** - “do not be harsh with” or “do not be angry toward”
- **do not provoke your children** - “do not needlessly make your children angry”

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 03 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 03 Translation Questions](#)

## Colossians 3:22-25

### UDB:

<sup>22</sup> Slaves, obey your masters in this world in every way. Do not obey your masters only when they are watching you, like those who merely want their masters to think they always obey. Instead, obey your masters sincerely from the heart because you honor the Lord Jesus. <sup>23</sup> Whatever work you do, work wholeheartedly for the Lord Jesus rather than for people. Do not work like those who are working merely for their human masters, <sup>24</sup> because you know the Lord will repay you; you will receive your share of what the Lord has promised you. Jesus Christ is the real master whom you are serving. <sup>25</sup> But God will judge each person in the same way; he will punish those who do wrong as they deserve.

### ULB:

<sup>22</sup> Slaves, obey your masters according to the flesh in all things, not with eyeservice as people pleasers, but with a sincere heart. Fear the Lord. <sup>23</sup> Whatever you do, work from the soul as to the Lord and not as to people. <sup>24</sup> You know that you will receive from the Lord the reward of the inheritance. It is the Lord Christ whom you serve. <sup>25</sup> For anyone who does unrighteousness will receive the penalty for the unrighteousness that he did, and there is no partiality.

### translationWords:

- servant, slave, slavery
- lord, master, sir
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- unrighteous, unrighteousness

### translationNotes:

- **obey your masters according to the flesh** - “obey your human masters”
- **things, not with eyeservice as people pleasers** - “things. Do not obey only when your master is watching, as though you need only to please people”
- **as to the Lord** - “as you would work for the Lord”
- **the reward of the inheritance** - “the inheritance as your reward”
- **inheritance** - Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **anyone who does unrighteousness will receive the penalty** - “God will punish anyone who does unrighteousness”
- **who does unrighteousness** - who actively does wrong of any kind
- **there is no partiality** - “God judges everyone by the same standard”



**Links:**

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 03 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 03 Translation Questions](#)

## Colossians 4 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

It appears [4:1](#) belongs with the material of chapter 3 instead of chapter 4.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### “In my own hand”

It was common in the ancient Near East to have someone physically write a letter while the author spoke. This is a common practice with the letters of the New Testament. Paul thought that this chapter was so important, he physically wrote it himself.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Mystery

Paul refers to the church as a “mystery.” The role of the church in the plans of God was once unknown, but has now been revealed by God. Part of this mystery involve the Gentiles’ equal standing with the Jews in the current plans of God. (See: [reveal](#), [revelation](#))

#### Links:

- [Colossians 04:01 Notes](#)

**Colossians 4:1****UDB:**

<sup>1</sup> Masters, treat your slaves justly and fairly supply what they need, because you know that you also have a master who is in heaven.

**ULB:**

4 <sup>1</sup> Masters, give to slaves what is right and fair. You know that you also have a master in heaven.

**translationWords:**

- [lord, master, sir](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **Connecting Statement:** - After speaking to masters, Paul ends his special instructions to the different kinds of believers in the church at Colossae.
- **right and fair** - These words mean almost the same thing and are used to emphasize the things that are morally correct. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **you also have a master in heaven** - God wants the relationship between an earthly master and his slave to be loving the way God, the heavenly master, loves his earthly servants, including the earthly slaves' masters.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 04 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 04 Translation Questions](#)

## Colossians 4:2-4

### UDB:

<sup>2</sup> Keep praying without stopping. Do not be lazy, but instead keep praying and thanking God. <sup>3</sup> Pray together for us too, so that God will make it possible for us to freely explain the good news, the secret about Christ that God is now revealing everywhere. It is because we proclaimed this good news that I am now in prison. <sup>4</sup> Pray that I might be able to fully explain the good news.

### ULB:

<sup>2</sup> Continue steadfastly in prayer. Stay alert in it in thanksgiving. <sup>3</sup> Pray together for us also, that God would open a door for the word, to speak the secret truth of Christ. Because of this, I am chained up. <sup>4</sup> And pray that I may make it clear, as I ought to speak.

### translationWords:

- pray, prayer
- God
- word
- mystery, hidden truth
- Christ, Messiah

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul continues to give instructions to believers on how to live and speak.
- **General Information:** - Here the word “us” refers to Paul and Timothy but not the Colossians. (See: [Exclusive “We”](#))
- **Continue steadfastly in prayer** - “Keep praying faithfully” or “Keep praying consistently”
- **God would open a door** - “God would provide opportunities” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the secret truth of Christ** - This refers to the gospel of Jesus Christ, which was not understood before Christ came.
- **Because of this, I am chained up** - Here “chained” is a metonym for being in prison. AT: “It is for proclaiming the message of Jesus Christ that I am now in prison” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **pray that I may make it clear** - “pray that I might be able to speak the message of Jesus Christ clearly”

### Links:

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)

- Colossians 04 General Notes
- Colossians 04 Translation Questions

## Colossians 4:5-6

### UDB:

<sup>5</sup> Live wisely around those who are not believers, and make each moment valuable by using it wisely. <sup>6</sup> Always speak graciously and in a pleasant and interesting way to those who do not believe in the Lord Jesus. Then you will know how to speak to each person about the Lord.

### ULB:

<sup>5</sup> Walk in wisdom toward those outside, and redeem the time. <sup>6</sup> Let your words always be with grace. Let them be seasoned with salt, so that you may know how you should answer each person.

### translationWords:

- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [grace, gracious](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Walk in wisdom toward those outside** - The idea of walking is often used for the idea of conducting one's life. AT: "Live in such a way that those who are not believers will see that you are wise" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **redeem the time** - "do the best things you can with your time" or "put the time to its best use" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Let your words always be with grace. Let them be seasoned with salt** - Food with salt is a metaphor for words that teach others and that others enjoy hearing. "Let your conversation always be gracious and attractive" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **so that you may know how you should answer** - "so that you may know how to answer questions from anyone about Jesus Christ" or "so that you may be able to treat every person well"

### Links:

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 04 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 04 Translation Questions](#)

## Colossians 4:7-9

### UDB:

<sup>7</sup> Tychicus will tell you everything that has been happening to me. He is a fellow believer whom I love, who helps me faithfully, and who serves the Lord Jesus together with me. <sup>8</sup> The reason that I am sending Tychicus to you with this letter is that you might know about us and that he might encourage you. <sup>9</sup> I am sending him to you with Onesimus, who is a faithful fellow believer, whom I love and who is your fellow townsman. They will tell you all about what has been happening here.

### ULB:

<sup>7</sup> As for the things concerning me, Tychicus will make them known to you. He is a beloved brother, a faithful servant, and fellow slave in the Lord. <sup>8</sup> I sent him to you for this, that you might know the matters about us, and so that he may encourage your hearts.[1]Some older versions read, *I sent him to you for this, that he might know the matters about you, and that he may encourage your hearts.* <sup>9</sup> I sent him together with Onesimus, the faithful and beloved brother, who is one of you. They will tell you everything that has happened here.

### translationWords:

- Tychicus
- beloved
- brother
- faithful, faithfulness
- servant, slave, slavery

### translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul closes with special instructions about certain people as well as greetings to and from individual believers.
- **General Information:** - Onesimus was a slave of Philemon in Colossae. He had stolen money from Philemon and run away to Rome where he became a Christian through the ministry of Paul. Now Tychicus and Onesimus are the ones bringing Paul's letter to Colossae.
- **the things concerning me** - "everything that has been happening to me" (UDB)
- **fellow slave** - "fellow servant." Though Paul is a free man, he sees himself as a servant of Christ and sees Tychicus as a fellow servant.
- **about us** - These words do not include the Colossians. (See: **Exclusive "We"**)
- **may encourage your hearts** - The heart was thought to be the center of many emotions. AT: "may encourage you" (See: **Metaphor**)
- **the faithful and beloved brother** - Paul calls Onesimus a fellow Christian and servant of Christ.

- **They will tell** - “Tychicus and Onesimus will tell”
- **everything that has happened here** - They will tell the Colossian believers all that is taking place where Paul is currently living. Tradition says Paul was in Rome under house arrest or in prison at this time.

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 04 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 04 Translation Questions](#)



## Colossians 4:10-11

### UDB:

<sup>10</sup> Aristarchus, who is in prison with me, and Mark, who is Barnabas' cousin, greet you. I have instructed you about Mark, so if he comes to you, welcome him. <sup>11</sup> Jesus, who is also named Justus, greets you, too. These three men are the only Jewish believers working with me to proclaim God as king through Christ Jesus. They have greatly helped and encouraged me.

### ULB:

<sup>10</sup> Aristarchus, my fellow prisoner, greets you, as well as Mark, the cousin of Barnabas (about whom you received orders; if he comes to you, receive him), <sup>11</sup> and also Jesus who is called Justus. These alone of the circumcision are my fellow workers for the kingdom of God. They have been a comfort to me.

### translationWords:

- [John Mark](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [circumcise, circumcision](#)
- [kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven](#)

### translationNotes:

- **Aristarchus** - He was in prison with Paul in Ephesus when Paul wrote this letter to the Colossians.
- **if he comes** - “if Mark comes”
- **Jesus who is called Justus** - This is a man who also worked with Paul.
- **These alone of the circumcision are my fellow workers for the kingdom of God** - Paul uses “circumcision” here to refer to Jews because, under the Old Testament law, all male Jews had to be circumcised. AT: “These three men are the only Jewish believers working with me to proclaim God as king through Christ Jesus” (UDB) (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **These alone of the circumcision** - “These men—Aristarchus, Mark, and Justus—alone of the circumcision”

### Links:

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 04 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 04 Translation Questions](#)

## Colossians 4:12-14

### UDB:

<sup>12</sup> Epaphras, who is your fellow townsman and a servant of Christ Jesus, greets you. He prays earnestly for you very often, that you might be strong and believe everything that God teaches us and promises us. <sup>13</sup> I can say that he has worked very hard for you, for those who live in the city of Laodicea, and for those who live in the city of Hierapolis. <sup>14</sup> Luke the doctor, whom I love, and Demas greet you.

### ULB:

<sup>12</sup> Epaphras greets you. He is one of you and a slave of Christ Jesus. He always strives for you in prayer, so that you may stand complete and fully assured in all the will of God. <sup>13</sup> For I bear witness of him, that he works hard for you, for those in Laodicea, and for those in Hierapolis. <sup>14</sup> Luke the beloved physician and Demas greet you.

### translationWords:

- servant, slave, slavery
- pray, prayer
- will of God
- witness, eyewitness
- Luke

### translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Laodicea and Hierapolis were towns close to Colossae.
- **Epaphras** - Epaphras was the man who had preached the good news to the people in Colossae. (See 1:7)
- **one of you** - “from your city” or “your fellow townsman” (UDB)
- **a slave of Christ Jesus** - “a committed disciple of Christ Jesus”
- **always strives for you in prayer** - “earnestly prays for you”
- **you may stand complete and fully assured** - “you may stand mature and confident”
- **I bear witness of him, that he works hard for you** - “I have observed that he has worked very hard for you” (UDB)
- **Demas** - This is another co-worker with Paul.

### Links:

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)

- Colossians 04 General Notes
- Colossians 04 Translation Questions

## Colossians 4:15-17

### UDB:

<sup>15</sup> Greet the fellow believers who live in Laodicea, and greet Nympha and the group of believers that meets in her house. <sup>16</sup> After someone reads this letter among you, have someone also read it to the assembly in Laodicea. And read the letter from Laodicea, too. <sup>17</sup> Tell Archippus to make sure that he completes the task that God gave him to do.

### ULB:

<sup>15</sup> Greet the brothers in Laodicea, and Nympha, and the church that is in her house. <sup>16</sup> When this letter has been read among you, have it read also in the church of the Laodiceans, and see that you also read the letter from Laodicea. <sup>17</sup> Say to Archippus, "Look to the ministry that you have received in the Lord, that you should fulfill it."

### translationWords:

- [church, Church](#)
- [house](#)
- [Lord](#)

### translationNotes:

- **brothers** - Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- **in Laodicea** - a city very close to Colossae where there was also a church
- **Nympha, and the church that is in her house** - A woman named Nympha hosted a house church. AT: "Nympha and the group of believers that meets in her house" (UDB)
- **Say to Archippus, "Look to the ministry that you have received in the Lord, that you should fulfill it** - Paul reminds Archippus of the task God had given him and that he, Archippus, was under obligation to the Lord to fulfill it. The words "Look," "you have received," and "you should fulfill" all refer to Archippus and should be singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Links:

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 04 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 04 Translation Questions](#)

**Colossians 4:18****UDB:**

<sup>18</sup> I, Paul, greet you now in my own handwriting. Remember me and pray for me in prison. I pray that our Lord Jesus Christ would continue to act graciously toward you all.

**ULB:**

<sup>18</sup> This greeting is with my own hand—Paul. Remember my chains. May grace be with you.

**translationWords:**

- [Paul, Saul](#)
- [grace, gracious](#)

**translationNotes:**

- **Connecting Statement:** - Paul closes his letter with a greeting written in his own handwriting.
- **Remember my chains** - Paul speaks of chains when he means his imprisonment. AT: “Remember me and pray for me while I am in prison” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **May grace be with you** - Here “grace” stands for God, who shows grace or acts kindly to believers. AT: “I pray that our Lord Jesus Christ would continue to act graciously toward you all” (UDB) (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Links:**

- [Introduction to Colossians](#)
- [Colossians 04 General Notes](#)
- [Colossians 04 Translation Questions](#)

## translationQuestions

### Colossians 1

**Q?** How did Paul become an apostle of Christ Jesus?

**A.** Paul became an apostle of Christ Jesus through the will of God. [1:1]

---

**Q?** To whom did Paul write this letter?

**A.** Paul wrote to those set apart for God and the faithful brothers at Colossae. [1:2]

---

**Q?** From where did the Colossians hear about the confident expectation that they now have?

**A.** The Colossians heard about their confident expectation in the word of truth, the gospel. [1:5]

---

**Q?** What does Paul say the gospel has been doing in the world?

**A.** Paul says the gospel has been bearing fruit and growing in all the world. [1:6]

---

**Q?** Who presented the gospel to the Colossians?

**A.** Epaphras, the faithful servant of Christ, presented the gospel to the Colossians. [1:7]

---

**Q?** With what does Paul pray that the Colossians be filled?

**A.** Paul prays that the Colossians be filled with the knowledge of God's will in all wisdom and spiritual understanding. [1:9]

---

**Q?** How does Paul pray that the Colossians will walk in their lives?

**A.** Paul prays that the Colossians will walk worthy of the Lord, bearing fruit with good deeds, growing in the knowledge of God. [1:10]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** For what have those set apart for God been qualified?

**A.** Those set apart for God have been qualified for a share in the inheritance in light. [1:12]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** From what has the Father rescued those set apart for him?

**A.** He rescued them from the dominion of darkness and transferred them to the kingdom of his Son. [1:13]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** In Christ, we have redemption, which is what?

**A.** In Christ we have redemption, which is the forgiveness of sins. [1:14]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** The Son is the image of who?

**A.** The Son is the image of the invisible God. [1:15]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What was created through Jesus Christ and for him?

**A.** All things were created through Jesus Christ and for him. [1:16]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** How did God reconcile all things to himself?

**A.** God reconciled all things to himself when he made peace through his Son's blood. [1:20]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What relationship did the Colossians have with God before they believed the gospel?

**A.** Before believing the gospel, the Colossians were strangers from God and were his enemies. [1:21]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What must the Colossians continue to do?

**A.** The Colossians must continue to be settled in the faith and confident of the gospel. [1:23]

---

**Q?** For whose sake is Paul suffering, and what is his attitude?

**A.** Paul is suffering for the sake of the church, and he rejoices in it. [1:24]

---

**Q?** What is the mystery that was hidden for ages but now has been revealed?

**A.** The mystery that was hidden for ages but now has been revealed is Christ in you, the confidence of glory. [1:27]

---

**Q?** What is the goal of Paul's admonishing and teaching?

**A.** Paul's goal is to present every person complete in Christ. [1:28]

---



## Colossians 2

**Q?** What is the mystery of God?

**A.** The mystery of God is Christ. [2:2]

---

**Q?** What is hidden in Christ?

**A.** All the hidden treasures of wisdom and knowledge are hidden in Christ. [2:3]

---

**Q?** What is Paul concerned might happen to the Colossians?

**A.** Paul is concerned that the Colossians might be deluded with persuasive speech. [2:4]

---

**Q?** What does Paul call the Colossians to do now that they have received Christ Jesus?

**A.** Paul calls the Colossians to walk in Christ Jesus in the same way that they received him. [2:6]

---

**Q?** Upon what are the empty deceits that Paul is concerned about based?

**A.** The empty deceits are based upon human tradition and the sinful belief systems of the world. [2:8]

---

**Q?** What lives in Christ?

**A.** All the fullness of God's nature lives in Christ. [2:9]

---

**Q?** Who is the head of all rule and authority?

**A.** Christ is the head of all rule and authority. [2:10]

---

**Q?** What is removed through the circumcision of Christ?

**A.** The sinful body of flesh is removed through the circumcision of Christ. [2:11]

---

**Q?** What happens in baptism?

**A.** A person is buried with Christ in baptism. [2:12]

---

**Q?** What is a person's condition before Christ makes him alive?

**A.** A person is dead in his sins before Christ makes him alive. [2:13]

---

**Q?** What did Christ do with the record of debts charged against us?

**A.** Christ removed the record of debts and nailed it to the cross. [2:14]

---

**Q?** What did Christ do with the rulers and authorities?

**A.** Christ removed the rulers and authorities, openly exposed them, and led them in a victory procession. [2:15]

---

**Q?** What does Paul say are a shadow of the things to come?

**A.** Paul says that food, drink, feast days, and Sabbaths are a shadow of the things to come. [2:17]

---

**Q?** To what reality do the shadows point?

**A.** The shadows point to the reality of Christ. [2:17]

---

**Q?** How is the whole body supplied and held together?

**A.** The whole body is supplied and held together by the head, Christ. [2:19]

---

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** What kinds of commandments does Paul say are part of the world's beliefs?

**A.** Commandments to not handle, not taste, and not touch are part of the world's beliefs. [2:20-22]

\_\_\_\_\_

**Q?** Against what do the rules of man-made religion have no value?

**A.** The rules of man-made religion have no value against the indulgence of the flesh. [2:23]

\_\_\_\_\_

### Colossians 3

**Q?** To where has Christ been raised?

**A.** Christ has been raised to sit at the right hand of God. [3:1]

---

**Q?** What should believers seek and what should they not seek?

**A.** Believers should seek the things above, and not the things of the earth. [3:1-2]

---

**Q?** Where has God put the believer's life?

**A.** God has hidden the believer's life in Christ. [3:3]

---

**Q?** What will happen to the believer when Christ is revealed?

**A.** When Christ is revealed, the believer will also be revealed with him in glory. [3:4]

---

**Q?** What must the believer put to death?

**A.** The believer must put to death the sinful desires of the earth. [3:5]

---

**Q?** What happens to those who are disobedient to God?

**A.** The wrath of God comes upon those who are disobedient to God. [3:6]

---

**Q?** What are some of the things that Paul says the believers must get rid of, which are part of the old self?

**A.** The believers must get rid of wrath, anger, evil intentions, insults, and obscene speech. [3:8]

---

**Q?** In whose image is the believer's new self created?

**A.** The believer's new self is created in the image of Christ. [3:10]

---

**Q?** What are some of the things that Paul says the believers must put on, which are part of the new self?

**A.** The believers must put on a heart of compassion, kindness, lowliness, meekness, and patience. [3:12]

---

**Q?** In what way should the believer forgive?

**A.** The believer should forgive in the same way that the Lord has forgiven him. [3:13]

---

**Q?** What is the bond of perfection among believers?

**A.** Love is the bond of perfection. [3:14]

---

**Q?** What should rule in the believer's heart?

**A.** The peace of Christ should rule in the believer's heart. [3:15]

---

**Q?** What should live in the believer richly?

**A.** The word of Christ should live in the believer richly. [3:16]

---

**Q?** What should the believer give to God in his attitude, song, word, and deed?

**A.** In his attitude, song, word, and deed the believer should give thanks to God. [3:15-17]

---

**Q?** How should a wife respond to her husband?

**A.** A wife should submit to her husband. [3:18]

---

**Q?** How should a husband treat his wife?

**A.** A husband should love his wife and not be bitter against her. [3:19]

---

**Q?** How should a child treat his parents?

**A.** A child should obey his parents in all things. [3:20]

---

**Q?** What should a father not do to his children?

**A.** A father should not provoke his children. [3:21]

---

**Q?** For whom are believers working in whatever they do?

**A.** Believers are working for the Lord in whatever they do. [3:23-24]

---

**Q?** What will those receive who serve the Lord in whatever they do?

**A.** Those who serve the Lord in whatever they do will receive the reward of the inheritance. [3:24]

---

**Q?** What will those receive who do unrighteousness?

**A.** Those who do unrighteousness will receive the penalty for what they did. [3:25]

---

**Colossians 4**

**Q?** What does Paul remind earthly masters that they also have?

**A.** Paul reminds earthly masters that they also have a master in heaven. [4:1]

---

**Q?** In what does Paul want the Colossians to continue steadfastly?

**A.** Paul wants the Colossians to continue steadfastly in prayer. [4:2]

---

**Q?** For what does Paul want the Colossians to pray?

**A.** Paul wants the Colossians to pray that he has an open door to speak the word, the mystery of Christ. [4:3]

---

**Q?** How does Paul instruct the Colossians to treat those who are outsiders?

**A.** Paul instructs them to live in wisdom, and speak with grace toward those who are outsiders. [4:5-6]

---

**Q?** What task had Paul given Tychicus and Onesimus?

**A.** Paul gave them the task of making everything known concerning him to the Colossians. [4:7-9]

---

**Q?** What instructions did Paul give concerning Mark, the cousin of Barnabus?

**A.** Paul told the Colossians to receive Mark if he comes to them. [4:10]

---

**Q?** For what does Epaphras pray for the Colossians?

**A.** He prays that the Colossians will stand complete and fully assured in all the will of God. [4:12]

---

**Q?** What is the name of the physician that is with Paul?

**A.** The physician's name is Luke. [4:14]

---

**Q?** In what kind of place was the church in Laodicea meeting?

**A.** The church in Laodicea was meeting in a house. [4:15]

---

**Q?** To what other church had Paul also written a letter?

**A.** Paul also had written a letter to the church in Laodicea. [4:16]

---

**Q?** How did Paul show that this letter was actually from him?

**A.** Paul wrote his name in his own handwriting at the end of the letter. [4:18]

---



## translationWords

### afflict, affliction

#### Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

#### Translation Suggestions:

- To afflict someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- In certain contexts “afflict” could be translated as “happen to” or “come to” or “bring suffering.”
- A phrase like, “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as, “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.” physical
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as, “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See: [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [leprous](#), [plague](#), [suffer](#), [suffering](#))

#### Bible References:

Waiting

## angel, archangel

### Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God is by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh” has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include, “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include, “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh who looked like an angel.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [chief](#), [head](#), [messenger](#), [Michael](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [02-12] God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- [22-03] The **angel** responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by God to bring you this good news.”
- [23-06] Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you.”
- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God...
- [25-08] Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- [38-12] Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- [38-15] “I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me.”

## apostle, apostleship

### Definition:

The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means, “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, including forcing demons to come out of people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “someone who is sent out” or “sent out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways from each other.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [authority](#), [disciple](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[26-10]** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **[30-01]** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **[38-02]** Judas was one of Jesus’ **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles’** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **[43-13]** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles’** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **[46-08]** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

## authority

### Definition:

The term “authority” refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” refers to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as, “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as, “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## baptize, baptism

### Definition:

In the New Testament, the terms “baptize” and “baptism” usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

- Besides water baptism, the Bible talks about being “baptized with the Holy Spirit” and “baptized with fire.”
- The term “baptism” is also used in the Bible to refer to going through great suffering.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
- Depending on the context, the term “baptize” could be translated as “purify,” “pour out on,” “plunge (or dip) into,” “wash,” or “spiritually cleanse.” For example, “baptize you with water” could be translated as, “plunge you into water.”
- The term “baptism” could be translated as, “purification,” “a pouring out,” “a dipping,” “a cleansing,” or “a spiritual washing.”
- When it refers to suffering, “baptism” could also be translated as “a time of terrible suffering” or “a cleansing through severe suffering.”
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [24-03] When people heard John’s message, many of them repented from their sins, and John **baptized** them. Many religious leaders also came to be **baptized** by John, but they did not repent or confess their sins.
- [24-06] The next day, Jesus came to be **baptized** by John.
- [24-07] John said to Jesus, “I am not worthy to **baptize** you. You should **baptize** me instead.”
- [42-10] So go, make disciples of all people groups by **baptizing** them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”

- [43-11] Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be **baptized** in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins."
- [43-12] About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were **baptized** and became part of the church at Jerusalem.
- [45-11] As Philip and the Ethiopian traveled, they came to some water. The Ethiopian said, "Look! There is some water! May I be **baptized**?"
- [46-05] Saul immediately was able to see again, and Ananias **baptized** him.
- [49-14] Jesus invites you to believe in him and be **baptized**.

## Barnabas

### Facts:

Barnabas was one of the early Christians who lived during the time of the apostles.

- Barnabas was from the Israelite tribe of Levi and was from the island of Cyprus.
- When Saul (Paul) became a Christian, Barnabas urged the other believers to accept him as a fellow believer.
- Barnabas and Paul traveled together to preach the good news about Jesus in different cities.
- His name was Joseph, but he was called “Barnabas,” which means “son of encouragement.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christian](#), [Cyprus](#), [good news](#), [gospel](#), [Levite](#), [Levi](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[46-08]** Then a believer named **Barnabas** took Saul to the apostles and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.
- **[46-09]** **Barnabas** and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church. I
- **[46-10]** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were fasting and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me **Barnabas** and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.” So the church in Antioch prayed for **Barnabas** and Saul and placed their hands on them.



## believe, believe in, belief

### Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

#### 1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

#### 2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as, “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believer](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [03-04] Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- [04-08] Abram **believed** God’s promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God’s promise.
- [11-02] God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- [11-06] But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- [37-05] Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”

## believer

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some translations may prefer to say, “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means, “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be, “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.

(See also: [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [Christian](#), [disciple](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[43-01]** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **[43-03]** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **[43-13]** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **[45-06]** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **[46-01]** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **[46-09]** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus...It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called “Christians.”

- [47-14] They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

## beloved

### Definition:

The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say, “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **blameless**

### **Definition:**

The term “blameless” literally means “without blame.” It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

- Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
- A person who has a reputation for being “blameless” behaves in a way that honors God.
- According to one verse, a person who is blameless is “one who fears God and turns away from evil.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- This could also be translated as, “with no fault to his character” or “completely obedient to God” or “avoiding sin” or “keeping away from evil.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## blood

### Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus’ blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See: [flesh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-03]** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **[10-03]** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **[11-05]** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **[13-09]** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **[48-10]** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

## brother

### Definition:

The term “brother” usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include, “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as, “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be, “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Christ, Messiah

### Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proved he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [David](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [anoint](#), [anointed](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-07]** The **Messiah** was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **[17-08]** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.



- [21-01] From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- [21-04] God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- [21-05] The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- [21-06] God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- [21-09] The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- [43-07] "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, "You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave."
- [43-09] "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- [43-11] Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- [46-06] Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

## church, Church

### Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “church” refers to a local group of believers in Jesus who regularly met together to pray and hear God’s word preached. The term “the Church” often refers to all Christians.

- This term literally refers to a “called out” assembly or congregation of people who meet together for a special purpose.
- When this term is used to refer to all believers everywhere in the whole body of Christ, some Bible translations capitalize the first letter (“Church”) to distinguish it from the local church.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone’s home. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the “church at Ephesus.”
- In the Bible, “church” does not refer to a building.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “church” could be translated as a “gathering together” or “assembly” or “congregation” or “ones who meet together.”
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of “church” does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate “assembly” in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#).)

(See also: [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [believer](#), [Christian](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[43-12]** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the **church** at Jerusalem.
- **[46-09]** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the **church**.
- **[46-10]** So the **church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- [47-13] The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the **Church** kept growing.
- [50-01] For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The **Church** has been growing.

## circumcise, circumcision

### Definition:

The term “circumcise” means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God’s covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham’s descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, “circumcision of the heart” refers figuratively to the “cutting away” or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, “the circumcised” refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term “uncircumcised” refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, “cut around” or “cut in a circle” or “cut off the foreskin.”
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of “male.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#), [covenant](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [05-03]”You must **circumcise** every male in your family.”
- [05-05] That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

## Colossae, Colossians

### Facts:

In New Testament times, Colossae was a city located in the Roman province of Phrygia, an area of land that is now southwestern Turkey. The Colossians were the people who lived in Colossae.

- Located about 100 miles inland from the Mediterranean Sea, Colossae was on an important trade route between the city of Ephesus and the Euphrates River.
- While in prison in Rome, Paul wrote a letter to the “Colossians” to correct false teachings among the believers at Colossae.
- When he wrote this letter, Paul had not visited the church at Colossae, but had heard about the believers there from his coworker, Epaphras.
- Epaphras was probably the Christian worker who started the church at Colossae.
- The book of Philemon was a letter by Paul addressed to a slave owner in Colossae.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See: [Ephesus](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## create, creation, Creator

### Definition:

The term “create” means to make something, or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as, “when God created the world at the beginning of time” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news “to all creation” means to preach the good news “to all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase, “Let all creation rejoice” means, “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as, “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as, “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as, “God, who created you.”

(See: [God](#), [good news](#), [gospel](#), [world](#))

### Bible References:

se, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world was created.

Waiting

**CROSS****Definition:**

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

- During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
- Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
- Note that this is a completely different word from the verb “cross” that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
- Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as “execution post” or “tree of death.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [crucify](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[40-01]** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to crucify him. They made him carry the **cross** on which he would die.
- **[40-02]** The soldiers brought Jesus to a place called “the Skull” and nailed his arms and feet to the **cross**.
- **[40-05]** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd mocked Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the **cross** and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”
- **[49-10]** When Jesus died on the **cross**, he received your punishment.
- **[49-12]** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the **cross** instead of you, and that God raised him to life again.

## darkness

### Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression, “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: [corrupt](#), [corruption](#), [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), [light](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## **death, die, dead**

### **Definition:**

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

### **1. Physical death**

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person’s spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

### **2. Spiritual death**

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression that refers to death in the target language.
- In some languages, “to die” may be expressed as “to not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as “to pass away” in English. However in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “spiritual death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression, “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as, “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression, “put to death” could also be translated as, “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[01-11]** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **[02-11]** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **[07-10]** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **[37-05]** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **[40-08]** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **[43-07]** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **[48-02]** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **[50-17]** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.
-

## disobey, disobedient, disobedience

### Definition:

The term “disobey” means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being “disobedient.”

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
- The term “disobedient” is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term “disobedience” means “the act of not obeying” or “behavior that is against what God wants.”
- A “disobedient people” could be translated by “people who keep on disobeying” or “people who do not do what God commands.”

(See also: [authority](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-11]** God said to the man, “You listened to your wife and **disobeyed** me.”
- **[13-07]** If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they **disobeyed** them, God would punish them.
- **[16-02]** Because the Israelites kept **disobeying** God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **[35-12]** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never **disobeyed** you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.’”

## dominion

### Definition:

The term “dominion” refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan’s dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ’s death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other Ways to translate this term could include “authority” or “power” or “control.”
- The phrase “have dominion over” could be translated as, “rule over” or “manage.”

(See: [authority](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect**

### **Definition:**

The term, “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones) or ”the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” These could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase, “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as, “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as, “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See: [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## evil, wicked, wickedness

### Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering or being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral”
- Other ways to translate these could include, “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [righteous](#), demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit)

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **[03-01]** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **[04-02]** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **[08-12]** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **[17-01]** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **[18-11]** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.

- [29-08] The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- [45-02] They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

## faith

### Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression, “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- The expression, “keep the faith” could be translated by, “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence, “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by, “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression, “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like, “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[05-06]** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **[31-07]** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **[32-16]** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”



- **[38-09]** Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

## faithful, faithfulness

### Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means, “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include, “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [08-05] Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- [14-12] Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- [15-13] The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- [17-09] David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- [18-04] God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon’s death.
- [35-12]”The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’
- [49-17] But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- [50-04] If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

## **fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh**

### **Definition:**

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” and related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to deeply respecting God and showing that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “to fear” can be translated as “to be afraid” or “to deeply respect” or “to revere” or “to be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence, “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as, “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as, “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” would be used instead.

(See also: [marvel](#), [wonder](#), [amazed](#), [astonished](#), [awe](#), [awesome](#), [Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [Yahweh](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## feast

### Definition:

The term “feast” refers to an event where a group of people eat a very large meal together, often for the purpose of celebrating something. The action “to feast” means to eat a large amount of food or to participate in eating a feast together.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In Bible times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- A feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.
- The term “to feast” could also be translated as “to eat lavishly” or “to celebrate by eating lots of food” or “to eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as, “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: [festival](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## firstborn

### Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born. Usually the firstborn

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “firstborn” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heritage](#), [heir](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [son](#), [son of](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## flesh

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression, “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression, “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression, “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kin-folk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression, “become one flesh” could be translated as, “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [Euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that the man and woman literally become one person.

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **forgive, forgiveness**

### **Definition:**

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against a person who did something hurtful. “Forgiveness” is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean, “cancel” as in the expression, “forgive a debt.”
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus’ sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “forgive” could be translated as, “pardon” or “cancel” or “release” or “not hold against” (someone).
- The term “forgiveness” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “practice of not resenting” or “declaring (someone) as not guilty” or “the act of pardoning.”

(See: [guilt](#), [guilty](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [07-10] But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- [13-15] Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- [17-13] David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- [21-05] In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- [29-01] One day Peter asked Jesus, “Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?”
- [29-08] I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- [38-05] Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

## sexual immorality

### Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God’s plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God’s will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person’s spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel’s unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term’s figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterer](#), [false god](#), [god](#), [prostitute](#), [harlot](#), [unfaithful](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## fruit, fruitful

### Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions and thoughts. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression, “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces,” that is, children.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural
- , “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression, “fruit of the land” could also be translated as, “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as, “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression, “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a women gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elisabeth says to Mary, “blessed is the fruit of your womb” she means, “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression, “fruit of the vine” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”

- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as, “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression, “fruitful labor” could be translated as, “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in you.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [grain](#), [grape](#)[Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [vine](#), [womb](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## Gentile

### Facts:

The term “Gentile” refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term “uncircumcised” is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God’s people.
- The Jews were also called “Israelites” or “Hebrews” at different times in history. They referred to everyone else as a “Gentile.”
- Gentile could also be translated as “not a Jew” or “non-Jewish” or “not an Israelite” (Old Testament) or “non-Jew.”
- Traditionally, Jews would not eat with Gentiles or associate with them, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## glory, glorious

### Definition:

In general, the term “glory” means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be “glorious.”

- Sometimes “glory” refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression “glory of the shepherds” refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression “to glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include, “splendor” or “brightness” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression, “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as, “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”

(See also: [glorify](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [25-06] Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- [37-01] When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- [37-08] Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

## God

### Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh” which means, “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include, “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be, “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use two different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase, “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as, “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#), [false god](#), [god](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [idol](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Yahweh](#),)

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [01-01]**God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- [01-15]**God** made man and woman in his own image.
- [05-03]"I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- [09-14]**God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- [10-02] Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- [16-01] The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- [22-07] You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- [24-09] There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- [25-07]"Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- [28-01]"There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- [49-09] But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- [50-16] But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

## God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

### Facts:

The terms, “God the Father” and “heavenly Father” refer to Yahweh, the one true God. This term also occurs as “Father,” especially when Jesus is referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the phrase “God the Father,” it is best to translate “Father” with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term “heavenly Father” could be translated by “Father who lives in heaven” or “Father God who lives in heaven” or “God our Father from heaven.”
- Usually “Father” is capitalized, to show that this refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [father](#), [forefather](#), [God](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [24-09] There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- [29-09] Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- [37-09] Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, “**Father**, thank you for hearing me.”
- [40-07] Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands.”
- [42-10] “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- [43-08] “Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**.”

- [50-10]”Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father.**”



## good, goodness

### Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as, “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include, “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [profit](#), [profitable](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), )

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-04] God saw that what he had created was **good**.

- [01-11] God planted...the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- [01-12] Then God said, ”It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- [02-04]”God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- [08-12]”You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- [14-15] Joshua was a **good** leader because he tTable of Contentsrusted and obeyed God.
- [18-13] Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- [28-01]”**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, ”Why do you call me ‘**good?**’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

## good news, gospel

### Definition:

The term “gospel” literally means “good news” and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God’s salvation for people through Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, “good news” is usually translated as “gospel” and is also used in phrases such as, the “gospel of Jesus Christ,” the “gospel of God” and the “gospel of the kingdom.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, “good message” or “good announcement” or “God’s message of salvation” or “the good things God teaches about Jesus.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “good news of” could include, “good news/message about” or “good message from” or “the good things God tells us about” or “what God says about how he saves people.”

(See: [kingdom](#), , [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [salvation](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [23-06] The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”
- [26-03] Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord’s favor.”
- [45-10] Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- [46-10] Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.
- [47-01] One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- [47-13] The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- [50-01] For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- [50-02] When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

- **[50-03]** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

**grace, gracious****Definition:**

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression “to find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include, “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression, “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as, “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## Greek, Grecian

### Facts:

The term “Greek” refers to the language spoken in the country of Greece. Greek was also spoken throughout the Roman Empire. The term “Grecian” means “Greek-speaking.”

- Since most non-Jewish people in the Roman Empire spoke Greek, Gentiles are often referred to as “Greeks” in the New Testament, especially when contrasted with Jews.
- The phrase “Grecian Jews” referred to Jews who spoke Greek in contrast to the “Hebraic Jews” who spoke only Hebrew, or perhaps Aramaic.
- Other ways to translate “Grecian” could include, “Greek-speaking” or “culturally Greek” or “Greek.”
- When referring to non-Jews, “Greek” could be translated as “Gentile.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aram](#), [Aramean](#), [Aramaic](#), [Gentile](#), [Greece](#), [Hebrew](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## head

### Definition:

In the Bible, the word “head” is used with several figurative meanings.

- Often this term is used to refer to being in authority over people, as in, “you have made me the head over nations.” This could be translated as, “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over...”
- Jesus is called the “head of the church.” Just as a person’s head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his “body,” the Church.
- The New Testament teaches that a husband is the “head” or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
- The expression, “no razor will ever touch his head” means “ he will never cut or shave his hair.”
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something as in the “head of the street.”
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
- Another figurative use for “head” is when it is used to represent the whole person as in, “this gray head” referring to an elderly person or “the head of Joseph” referring to Joseph. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as, “authority” or “the one who leads and directs” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “head of” can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person’s name. For example, “the head of Joseph” could simply be translated as “Joseph.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “beginning” or “source” or “ruler” or “leader” or “top.”

(See: [grain](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

- [Prev chunk: publish-current](#)

- This chunk : review-publish | publish-current
- Next chunk: publish-current



## heart

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression, “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. They have been deeply hurt emotionally.

### Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this nonfiguratively with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as, “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as, “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include, “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#), [hardness](#), [harden](#) other)

### Bible References:

Waiting

## heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

### Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the “kingdom of heaven” he is referring to the kingdom of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it could be translated as “God.”
- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See: [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [04-02] They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- [14-11] He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [29-09] Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- [37-09] Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- [42-11] Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

## holy, holiness

### Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- Since God is holy, people cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because they are mere human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include, “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [consecratesanctify](#), [sanctification](#), [set apart](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-16] He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- [09-12]”You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- [13-02]”If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- [13-05]”Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- [22-05]”So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- [50-02] As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

## Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord

### Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as, “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include, “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [gift](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-01]** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **[24-08]** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **[26-01]** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **[26-03]** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **[42-10]** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **[43-03]** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **[43-08]** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”

- **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit.**"
- **[45-01]** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

## house

### Definition:

The term “house” is often used figuratively in the Bible.

- Sometimes it means “household,” referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Often “house” refers to a person’s descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
- In Hebrews 3, “God’s house” is used as a metaphor to refer to God’s people or more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as, “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as, “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include, “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.”
- “House of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [house of God](#), [Yahweh’s house](#), [household](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **humble, humility**

### **Definition:**

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand our weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- If a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as, “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: [proud](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [17-02] David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- [34-10] ”God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

## idol, idolatrous

### Definition:

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#), [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-05]** ”Do not make **idols** or worship them, because I, Yahweh, am a jealous God.”
- **[13-12]** Aaron made a golden **idol** in the shape of a calf. The people began to wildly worship the **idol** and make sacrifices to it!
- **[14-03]** ”You must completely destroy all of their **idols**. If you do not obey me, you will worship their **idols** instead of me.”
- **[18-12]** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped **idols**. This kind of worship often included sexual immorality and sometimes even child sacrifice.
- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshipping **idols** and to start showing justice and mercy to others.



## **image of God, image**

### **Definition:**

The term “image” refers to something that looks like something else or that is like someone in character or essence. The phrase “image of God” is used in different ways, depending on the context.

- At the beginning of time, God created human beings “in his image,” that is, “in his likeness.” This means that people have certain characteristics that reflect the image of God, such as the ability to feel emotion, the ability to reason and communicate, and a spirit that lives eternally.
- The Bible teaches that Jesus, God’s Son, is “the image of God,” that is, he is God himself. Unlike human beings, Jesus was not created. From all eternity, God the Son has all the divine characteristics because he has had the same essence with God the Father.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- When referring to Jesus, “image of God” could be translated as “exact likeness of God” or “same essence as God” or “same being as God.”
- When referring to human beings, “God created them in his image” could be translated with a phrase that means, “God created them to be like him” or “God created them with characteristics like himself.”

(See also: [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him**

### **Definition:**

The phrase “in Christ” and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

- Other related terms include, “in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ.”
- Possible meanings for the term, “in Christ” could include, “because you belong to Christ” or “through the relationship you have with Christ” or “based on your faith in Christ.”
- These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
- Note: Sometimes the word “in” belongs with the verb. For example, “share in Christ” means to “share in” the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To “glory in” Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To “believe in” Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “in Christ” and “in the Lord” (and related phrases) could include:
  - “who belong to Christ”
  - “because you believe in Christ”
  - “because Christ has saved us”
  - “in service to the Lord”
  - “relying on the Lord”
  - “because of what the Lord has done.”
- People who “believe in” Christ or who “have faith in” Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like “believe in” or “share in” or “trust in.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faith](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## **inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir**

### **Definition:**

The terms “inherit” and “inheritance” refer to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The “heir” is the person who receives the inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God’s people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to “inherit the land.” This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will “inherit salvation” and “inherit eternal life.” It is also expressed as, “inherit the kingdom of God.” This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
  - The Bible says that wise people will “inherit glory” and righteous people will “inherit good things.”
  - To “inherit the promises” means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
  - This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who “inherit the wind” or “inherit folly.” This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include, “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include, “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- When God’s people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as, “valued ones belonging to him.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions” or “person chosen to receive (God’s) spiritual possessions or blessings.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as, “blessings from God” or “inherited blessings.”

(See also: [heir](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Promised Land](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[04-06]** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **[35-03]** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

## Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

### Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means, "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for the Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His earthly parents were told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or Messiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Many languages spell "Jesus" and "Christ" in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term, "Christ," some languages may prefer to use some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [high priest](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#), [Mary](#), [Savior](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [\[22-04\]](#) The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- [\[23-02\]](#) "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- [\[24-07\]](#) So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- [\[24-09\]](#) There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.
- [\[25-08\]](#) **Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.

- [26-08] Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- [31-03] Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- [38-02] He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- [40-08] Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- [42-11] Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- [50-17] **Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

## **Jew, Jewish, Jews**

### **Facts:**

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson, Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.
- Often the phrase "the Jews" refers to the leaders of the Jews, not all the Jewish people. In those contexts, some translations add "leaders of" to make this clear.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Jewish leaders](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [religious leaders](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[20-11]** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **[20-12]** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **[37-10]** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **[37-11]** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **[40-02]** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **[46-06]** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

## John Mark

### Facts:

John Mark, also known as “Mark,” was one of the men who traveled with Paul on his missionary journeys. He is most likely the author of the Gospel of Mark.

- John Mark accompanied his cousin Barnabas and Paul on their first missionary journey.
- When Peter was put in prison in Jerusalem, the believers there were praying for him at John Mark’s mother’s house.
- Mark was not an original apostle, but was taught by both Paul and Peter and worked together with them in ministry.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Barnabas](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting



## joy, joyful

### Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term, “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or with a phrase that means, “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” **Metonymy**)

(See also: [rejoice](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[33-07]**”The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with **joy**.”
- **[34-04]**”The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field.”
- **[41-07]** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

## kingdom

### Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as, “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be, “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase, “kingdom of light” could be translated as, “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-02]** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **[18-04]** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.

- **[18-07]** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **[18-08]** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **[21-08]** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

## kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

### Definition:

The terms “kingdom of God” and “kingdom of heaven” both refer to God’s rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term “heaven” to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- In the NT book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God’s kingdom as “the kingdom of heaven,” probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God’s kingdom forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “kingdom of God” can be translated as “God’s rule (as king)” or “when God reigns as king” or “God’s rule over everything.”
- The term “kingdom of heaven” could also be translated as “God’s rule from heaven as king” or “God in heaven reigning” or “heaven’s reign” or “heaven ruling over everything.” If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase “kingdom of God” could be translated instead.
- Some translations may prefer to capitalize “Heaven” to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text such as, “kingdom of heaven (that is, ‘of God’).”
- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of “heaven” in this expression.

(See also: [God](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [king](#), [kingdom](#), [King of the Jews](#), [reign](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [24-02] He (John) preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the **kingdom of God** is near!”
- [28-06] Then Jesus said to his disciples, “It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the **kingdom of God**! Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the **kingdom of God**.”
- [29-02] Jesus said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants.”

- [34-01] Jesus told many other stories about the **kingdom of God**. For example, he said, "The **kingdom of God** is like a mustard seed that someone planted in his field."
- [34-03] Jesus told another story, "The **kingdom of God** is like yeast that a woman mixes into some bread dough until it spreads throughout the dough."
- [34realm of authority-04]"The **kingdom of God** is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again."
- [34-05]"The **kingdom of God** is also like a perfect pearl of great value."
- [42-09] He proved to his disciples in many ways that he was alive, and he taught them about the **kingdom of God**.
- [49-05] Jesus said that the **kingdom of God** is more valuable than anything else in the world.
- [50-02] When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the good news about the **kingdom of God** to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

## know, knowledge, make known

### Definition:

To “know” means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression “make known” is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include, “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know” depending on whether it refers to knowing facts or to knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as, “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as, “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **labor, laborer**

### **Definition:**

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It often implies that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include, “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or “to work hard.”

(See also: [hard](#), [hardness](#), [harden](#), [labor pains](#), [in labor](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

### Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms “law” and “God’s law” are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites.
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament.
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
  - all of God’s instructions and will.
- The phrase “the law and the prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”).

### Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws” since they refer to many instructions.
- The “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as, “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include: “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions”
- The phrase, “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as, “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [instruction](#), [Moses](#), [Ten Commandments](#), [lawful](#), [lawfully](#), [unlawful](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.



- **[13-09]** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **[15-13]** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **[16-01]** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.
- **[21-05]** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **[27-01]** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **[28-01]** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

## lord, master, sir

### Definition:

The term “lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated as “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It could also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, it could be translated as “master” if the context shows it means “religious teacher.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is written as “Lord” (capitalized).

(See also: [Lord](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [25-05] But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God’s word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the **Lord** your God.’”
- [25-07] Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.’”
- [26-03] This is the year of the **Lord’s** favor.
- [27-02] The law expert replied that God’s law says, “Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind.”
- [31-05] Then Peter said to Jesus, “**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water”
- [43-09] “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!”
- [47-03] By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- [47-11] Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved.”
-

## Lord

### Facts:

The term “Lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over people. When it is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note however that when used as a form of addressing someone or at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as, “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as, “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULB and UDB, the title, “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages translate this term as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme ruler.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## love

### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” which some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others, even when it doesn’t benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, it involves actions that show that someone is thinking of what will cause the other person to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULB, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- It can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.

3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

4. In the figurative expression, “Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated,” the term “loved” refers to God’s choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as “chosen.” Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn’t given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term “hated” is used figuratively here to mean “rejected” or “not chosen.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”

- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [save](#), [safe](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [27-02] The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- [33-08] “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- [36-05] As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- [39-10] “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- [47-01] She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- [48-01] When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- [49-03] He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- [49-04] He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- [49-07] Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- [49-09] But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- [49-13] God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

## Luke

### Facts:

Luke was the author of two books of the New Testament: the gospel of Luke and the book of Acts.

- In his letter to the Colossians, Paul refers to Luke as a doctor. Paul also mentions Luke in two of his other letters.
- It is thought that Luke was a Greek and a Gentile before coming to know Christ. In his gospel, Luke includes several accounts that highlight Jesus' love for all peoples, both Jews and Gentiles.
- Luke accompanied Paul on two of his missionary journeys and helped him in his work.
- In some early church writings, it is said that Luke was born in the city of Antioch in Syria.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Antioch](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Syria](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **mystery, hidden truth**

### **Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “mystery” refers to something unknown or difficult to understand that God is now explaining.

- The New Testament states that the gospel of Christ was a mystery that was not known in past ages.
- One of the specific points described as a mystery is that Jews and Gentiles would be equal in Christ.
- This term could also be translated as “secret” or “hidden things” or “something unknown.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [Gentile](#), [good news](#), [gospel](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish](#), [Jews](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## Paul, Saul

### Facts:

Paul was a leader of the early church who was sent by Jesus to take the good news to many other people groups.

- Paul was a Jew who was born in the Roman city of Tarsus, and was therefore also a Roman citizen.
- Paul was originally called by his Jewish name, Saul.
- Saul became a Jewish religious leader and arrested Jews who became Christians because he thought they were dishonoring God by believing in Jesus.
- Jesus revealed himself to Saul in a blinding light and told him to stop hurting Christians.
- Saul believed in Jesus and began teaching his fellow Jews about him.
- Later, God sent Saul to teach non-Jewish people about Jesus and started churches in different cities and provinces of the Roman empire. At this time he started being called by the Roman name “Paul.”
- Paul also wrote letters to encourage and teach Christians in the churches in these cities. Several of these letters are in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christian](#), [Jewish Leaders](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[45-06]** A young man named **Saul** agreed with the people who killed Stephen and guarded their robes while they threw stones at him.
- **[46-01]** **Saul** was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the believers.
- **[46-02]** While **Saul** was on his way to Damascus, a bright light from heaven shone all around him, and he fell to the ground. **Saul** heard someone say, “**Saul! Saul!** Why do you persecute me?”
- **[46-05]** So Ananias went to **Saul**, placed his hands on him, and said, “Jesus who appeared to you on your way here, sent me to you so that you can regain your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit.” **Saul** immediately was able to see again, and Ananias baptized him.
- **[46-06]** Right away, **Saul** began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **[46-09]** Barnabas and **Saul** went there (Antioch) to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church.



- **[47-01]** As **Saul** traveled throughout the Roman Empire, he began to use his Roman name, "**Paul.**"
- **[47-14]** **Paul** and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.

## peace, peaceful

### Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [15-06] God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- [15-12] Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- [16-03] Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- [21-13] He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- [48-14] David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- [50-17] Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

## **persevere, perseverance**

### **Definition:**

The terms “persevere” and “perseverance” refer to continuing to do something even though it may be very difficult or take a long time.

- To persevere can also mean to keep acting in a Christ-like way even while going through difficult trials or circumstances.
- If a person has “perseverance” it means he is able to keep doing what he should do, even when it is painful or difficult.
- Continuing to believe what God teaches requires perseverance, especially when faced with false teachings.
- Be careful not to use a word like “stubborn” which usually has a negative meaning.

(See also: [patient](#), [patience](#), [trial](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## power, powers

### Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include, “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”
- An expression like “save us from the power of our enemies” could be translated as, “save us from being oppressed by our enemies” or “rescue us from being controlled by our enemies.” In this case, “power” has the meaning of using one’s strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), )

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[22-05]** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **[26-01]** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **[32-15]** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **[42-11]** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **[43-06]** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **[44-08]** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

## pray, prayer

### Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. This term is also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [praise](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [06-05] Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- [13-12] But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- [19-08] Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- [21-07] Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- [38-11] Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- [43-13] The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- [49-18] God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

## **proclaim, proclamation**

### **Definition:**

To proclaim is to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as, “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See: [preach](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## psalm

### Definition:

The term “psalm” refers to a sacred song, often in the form of a poem that was written to be sung.

- The Old Testament book of Psalms has a collection of these songs written by King David and other Israelites such as Moses, Solomon, and Asaph, among others.
- The psalms were used by the nation of Israel in their worship of God.
- Psalms can be used to express joy, faith, and reverence, as well as pain and sorrow.
- In the New Testament, Christians are instructed to sing psalms to God as a way of worshiping him.

(See also: [David](#), [faith](#), [joy](#), [joyful](#), [Moses](#), [sacred](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**raise, rise, risen, arise, arose****Definition:****raise, raise up**

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The figurative phrase, “raise up” means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase, “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

**rise, arise**

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose” and “arose” are used for expressing past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as, “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen”!

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “raise” or “raise up” can be translated as “to lift up” or “to make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as, “to cause to appear” or “to appoint” or “to bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead,” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as, “provide” or “appoint” or “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [exalt](#), [exaltation](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting



**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- [21-14] The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- [41-05] "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- [43-07] "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- [44-05] "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- [44-08] Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- [48-04] This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- [49-02] He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- [49-12] You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

## reconcile, reconciliation

### Definition:

The terms “reconcile” and “reconciliation” refer to “making peace” between people who were formerly enemies with each other.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to God reconciling people to himself through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus Christ.
- Because of sin, all human beings are God’s enemies. But because of his compassionate love, God provided a way for people to be reconciled to him through Jesus.
- Through trusting in Jesus’ sacrifice as payment for their sin, people can be forgiven and have peace with God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “reconcile” could also be translated as, “make peace” or “restore good relations” or “cause to be friends.”
- The term “reconciliation” could be translated as “restoring good relations” or “making peace” or “causing peaceful relating.”

(See also: [peace](#), [peaceful](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#) )

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **redeem, redemption, redeemer**

### **Definition:**

The terms “redeem” and “redemption” refer to buying back something that was previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things.
- For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full payment for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “the buying back.”
- The words, “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may only use one term to translate both these terms.

(See also: [free](#), [freedom](#), [liberty](#), [ransom](#) )

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## rejoice

### Definition:

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as, “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said, “my soul rejoices in God my Savior” she meant, “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

(See also: [joy](#), [joyful](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## reveal, revelation

### Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- In the Bible, the term “reveal” is often used to describe how God has made himself known to people.
- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul says that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- The New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealing events that will happen in the end times. He revealed this to the apostle John through visions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include, “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be, “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in this word.
- The phrase, “where there is no revelation” could be translated as, “when God does not reveal himself to people” or “when God has not spoken to people” or “among people whom God has not communicated to.”

(See also: [good news](#), [gospel](#), [good news](#), [gospel](#), [dream](#), [vision](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## right hand

### Definition:

The figurative expression “right hand” refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person’s right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph’s son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person’s right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include, “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God’s power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be, “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated by, “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”
- In Psalm 105:9, God calls for an accuser to be at the “right hand” of a wicked leader sent to punish his rebellious people. This could be translated as, “appoint an accuser to have the place of honor beside that wicked leader” or “appoint an accuser to help that wicked leader punish them.”

(See also: [accuse](#), [accusation](#), [accuser](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [mighty](#), [might](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#), [rebel](#), [rebellious](#), [rebellion](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Sabbath

### Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [rest](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-05]** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **[26-02]** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **[41-03]** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

## **servant, slave, slavery**

### **Definition:**

The word for “servant” can also mean “slave” and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a servant or a slave is being referred to.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master’s household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave is a kind of servant who is the property of the person he works for. The person who buys a slave is called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treat their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treat their slaves very well, like a servant who is a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It does not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God are often referred to as his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obey God through faith in Christ are often called his “servants.”
- Christians are also called “slaves to righteousness,” which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave’s commitment to obeying his master. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [serve](#), [service](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[06-01]** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **[08-04]** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **[09-13]** ”I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt.”



- [19-10] Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- [29-03] "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- [35-06] "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- [47-04] The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- [50-04] Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

**serve, service****Definition:**

The term “serve” means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to “worship.”

- In the context of a woman serving her guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.”
- When Jesus told the disciples to serve the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute to” or “hand out to” or “give to.”<sup>1</sup>[comment\\_5adb7a6af206fdb7787dd58f4b215940](#)
- The term “service” refers to the act of serving. It can also be used to refer to a “meeting” of Christians as they worship God together.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as, “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- “To serve God” can be translated as “to worship and obey God” or “to do the work that God has commanded.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables.
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses.
- Now they “serve” the new covenant, that is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about this in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

### Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a sinful nature that controls them.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- “To sin” could also be translated as “to disobey God” or “to do wrong.”
- Depending on the context, “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include, “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [flesh](#), [tax collector](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- \* **[03-15]** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- \* **[13-12]** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- \* **[20-01]** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- \* **[21-13]** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- \* **[35-01]** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- \* **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- \* **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- \* **[48-08]** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- \* **[49-17]** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

## Son of God, the Son, Son

### Facts:

The term “Son of God” refers to Jesus, the Word of God who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as “the Son.”

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.
- Because Jesus is God’s Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For the term, “Son of God,” it is best to translate “Son” with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate “son” fits with the word used to translate “father” and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using capital letters to begin “Son” will help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase “the Son” is a shortened form of “the Son of God”, especially when in the same context as “the Father.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [en:obe:kt:jesus]], [son](#), [son of](#), [sons of God](#)))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [22-05] The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God**.”
- [24-09] God had told John, “The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God**.”?
- [31-08] The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, “Truly, you are **the Son of God**.”
- [37-05] Martha answered, “Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God**.”

- **[42-10]** So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **[46-06]** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, ”Jesus is the **Son of God!**”
- **[49-09]** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

## spirit, spiritual

### Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings that give nourishment to a person’s spirit, “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in, “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” or “spirit of jealousy.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include, “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person as in, “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as, “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as, “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as, “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The figurative expression “spiritual milk” could also be translated as, “basic teachings from God” or “God’s teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does).”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- A “spiritual gift” could be translated as, “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [soul](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **[13-03]** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **[40-07]** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **[45-05]** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **[48-07]** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.



## suffer, suffering

### Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means to “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as, “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [09-13] God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- [38-12] Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”
- [42-03] He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- [42-07] He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- [44-05] “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die.”
- [46-04] God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake.”
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

## throne

### Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a king sits to decide important matters and to listen to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a king has.
- The word “throne” is often used figuratively to refer to the king, his reign, or his power. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- In the Bible, God is often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus is described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: [authority](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [king](#), [reign](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## Timothy

### Facts:

Timothy was a young man from Lystra who became a believer in Christ as a result of Paul's ministry in his town. He later joined Paul on several missionary trips and helped shepherd new communities of believers.

- Timothy's father was a Greek, but both his grandmother Lois and his mother Eunice were Jews and believers in Christ.
- The elders and Paul formally appointed Timothy for the ministry by placing their hands on him and praying for him.
- Two books in the New Testament (I Timothy and 2 Timothy) are letters written by Paul, providing guidance to Timothy as a young leader of local churches.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [believer](#), [church](#), [Church](#), [Greek](#), [Grecian](#), [minister](#), [ministry](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## tradition

### Definition:

The term “tradition” refers to customs and practices that have been kept over time and which are passed down to people in later generations.

- Often in the Bible the word “traditions” refers to teachings and practices that people made, not God’s laws. The expression, “tradition of men” or “human tradition” makes this clear.
- Phrases such as “traditions of the elders” or “traditions of my fathers” refer specifically to Jewish customs and practices that Jewish leaders over time had added to the laws God gave to the Israelites through Moses. Even though these added traditions did not come from God, people thought they had to obey them in order to be righteous.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “tradition” in a different way to refer to teachings about Christian practice that came from God and that he and other apostles had taught new believers.
- In modern times, there are many Christian traditions that are not taught in the Bible, but rather are the result of historically accepted customs and practices. These traditions should always be evaluated in light of what God teaches us in the Bible.

(See also: [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [believer](#), [Christian](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [generation](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish](#), [Jews](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [Moses](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

**trespass****Definition:**

To “trespass” means to break a law or to violate the rights of another person.

- A trespass can be a violation of moral or civil law or a sin committed against another person.
- This term is related to the terms “sin,” and “transgress,” especially as it relates to disobeying God.
- All sins are trespasses against God.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “to trespass against” could be translated as “to sin against” or “to break the rule.”
- Some languages may have an expression like “cross the line” that could be used to translate “trespass.”
- Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as “transgress” and “sin.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [iniquity](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [transgress](#), [transgression](#) )

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## true, truth, come true

### Definition:

The terms “true” and “truth” refer to concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said.

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- The expression “come true” or “came true” is an expression that means that a prophecy actually happened as it was predicted that it would.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- God’s word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include, “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as, “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as, “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as, “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as, “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by, “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** The snake responded to the woman, “That is not **true**! You will not die.”
- **[14-06]** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, “It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!”
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God.

- [31-08] They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- [39-10] "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

## Tychicus

### Facts:

Tychicus was one of Paul's fellow ministers of the gospel.

- Tychicus accompanied Paul on at least one of his missionary journeys to Asia.
- Paul described him as “beloved ” and “faithful”.
- Tychicus carried Paul's letters to Ephesus and Colosse.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asia](#), [beloved](#), [Colossae](#), [Colossians](#), [Ephesus](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [good news](#), [gospel](#), [minister](#), [ministry](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink}}



## **uncircumcised, uncircumcision**

### **Definition:**

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God’s people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”
- The expression, “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include, “not God’s people” or “rebellious like those who don’t belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”
- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as, “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [circumcise](#), [circumcision](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## unclean

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [clean](#), [cleanse](#), [defile](#), [be defiled](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [unholy](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **unrighteous, unrighteousness**

### **Definition:**

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”

(See also: [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unjust](#), [unjustly](#), [injustice](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [unlawful](#))

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## walk

### Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [\[:en:obe:other:obey\]](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## **will of God**

### **Definition:**

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term “to will” means “to determine” or “to desire.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The “will of God” could also be translated as, “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

### **Bible References:**

Waiting

## wise, wisdom

### Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- In the Bible, the term “worldly wisdom” is a figurative way of referring to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love and patience.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include, “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See: [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-05] She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- [18-01] When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- [23-09] Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- [45-01] He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

## witness, eyewitness

### Definition:

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- “To witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression, “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person-seeing-it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as, “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as, “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- “To witness to” could be translated as, “to tell what was seen” or “to testify” or “to state what happened.”
- “To witness” something could be translated as “to see something” or “to experience something happen.”

(See also: [guilt](#), [guilty](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [testimony](#), [testify](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[39-02]** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.

- [39-04] The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- [42-08]"It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- [43-07]"We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."



**word****Definition:**

A “word” refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, “You did not believe my words,” which means, “You did not believe what I said.”
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Often in the Bible “the word” refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in “the word of God” or “the word of truth.”
- Sometimes “word” refers to speech in general, such as “powerful in word and deed” which means “powerful in speech and behavior.”
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called “the Word.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Different ways of translating “word” or “words” include, “teaching” or “message” or “news” or “a saying” or “what was said.”
- When it refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Saying.”

(See also: [word of God](#), [God’s word](#), [scripture](#))

**Bible References:**

Waiting

## worship

### Definition:

“To worship” means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

- This term often means literally, “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- Some people worship false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [praise](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **[14-02]** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **[17-06]** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[18-12]** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **[25-07]** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, “**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.”
- **[26-02]** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **[47-01]** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **[49-18]** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

## worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

### Definition:

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as, “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase “to have worth” could also be translated as “to be valuable” or “to be important.”
- The phrase, “is worth more than” could be translated as, “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as, “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See: [honor](#), [to honor](#))

### Bible References:

Waiting

## translationAcademy

### Biblical Imagery - Man-made Objects

*This answers the question: What are some examples things people make that are used as images in the Bible?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#)
- [Metaphor](#)
- [Metonymy](#)

Some images from the Bible involving man-made objects are listed below in alphabetical order. The word in all capital letters represents an image. The word does not necessarily appear in every verse that has the image, but the idea that the word represents does.

#### **BRONZE represents strength**

He trains...my arms to bend a bow of bronze. Psalm 18:34 ULB)

#### **CHAINS represent control**

Let us tear off the shackles they put on us and throw off their chains. Psalm 2:3

#### **CLOTHING represents moral qualities (emotions, attitudes, spirit, life)**

It is God who puts strength on me like a belt. (Psalm 18:32 ULB)

Righteousness will be the belt of his waist, and faithfulness the belt around his hips. (Isaiah 11:5 ULB)

May my adversaries be clothed with shame; may they wear their shame like a robe. (Psalm 109:29 ULB)

I will clothe his enemies with shame. (Psalm 132:18 ULB)

#### **A SNARE (A LIGHT TRAP FOR BIRDS WORKED BY CORDS) represents death**

For he will rescue you from the snare of the hunter. (Psalm 91:3 ULB)

The cords of death surrounded me, and the snares of sheol confronted me. (Psalm 116:3 ULB)

The cords of the wicked have ensnared me. (Psalm 119:61 ULB)

The wicked have set a snare for me. (Psalm 119:110 ULB)

The wicked is ensnared by his own actions. (Psalm 9:16 ULB)

**A SNARE IS PERSUASION TO DO EVIL**

They mingled with the nations and learned their ways and worshiped their idols, which became a snare to them. (Psalm 106:35-36 ULB)

**A TENT represents a house, home, people in one's home, descendants**

God will likewise destroy you forever; he will take you up and pluck you out of your tent. (Psalm 52:5 ULB)

The house of the wicked will be destroyed, but the tent of the upright will flourish. (Proverbs 14:11 ULB)

A throne will be established in covenant faithfulness, and one from David's tent will faithfully sit there. (Isaiah 16:5 ULB)

## Abstract Nouns

This answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its *weight*?" could be expressed as "How much does it *weigh*?" or "How *heavy* is it?"

### Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **ABSTRACT NOUNS** are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Abstract nouns allow us to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if we did not have those nouns. For example, we can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if English did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then we would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. We would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned."

Abstract nouns also allow us to refer to a situation without telling more details about it than we want to tell. For example, we can say "I got here late because there was an accident on the highway." "Accident" is an abstract noun. If it does not matter whose accident it was, or what kind of accident it was, then it can be better if I do not have to say these things about it.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will have other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs, that express some of the meaning in the abstract noun.

### Examples from the Bible

from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But *godliness* with *contentment* is great *gain*. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

### Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

- **from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
  - “Ever since *you were a child* you have known the sacred writings.”
- **But *godliness with contentment* is great *gain*.** (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
  - “But *being godly* and *content* is very *beneficial*.”
  - “But we *benefit* greatly when we *are godly* and *content*.”
  - “But we *benefit* greatly when we *honor and obey God* and when we are *happy with what we have*.”
- **Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.** (Luke 19:9 ULB)
  - “Today the people in this house *have been saved*...”
  - “Today God *has saved* the people in this house...”
- **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

- "The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *moving slowly* to be"
- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart.**  
(1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
  - "He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal *the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.*"



## Active or Passive

*This answers the question: What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Sentence Structure*
- *Verbs*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences the subject is the one that the action is done to. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- ACTIVE: *My father* built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: *The house* was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when not to.

### Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

**ACTIVE:** *My father* built the house in 2010.

**PASSIVE:** *The house* was built by my father in 2010.

**PASSIVE:** *The house* was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same reasons in all of the languages that have it.

### Purposes for the passive:

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

## Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

## Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants *were killed*, and your servant Uriah the Hittite *was killed* too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemies shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal *was broken down* ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down.

No stonework *was seen* there. (1 Kings 6:18 ULB)

This means that no one saw stonework there. The point is that no stonework was done there.

## Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action.
3. Use a different verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
  - *The king's servants gave* Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead use a generic expression like "they," or "people," or "someone."

- **It would be better for him if a millstone *were put* around his neck and he *were thrown* into the sea** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
  - It would be better for him if *they were to put* a millstone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.
  - It would be better for him if *someone were to put* a heavy stone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.

3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
  - He *received* a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Abstract Nouns*
- *Word Order*

## Doublet

*This answers the question: What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

A doublet is a pair of words used together that mean nearly the same nearly thing. In some languages people do not use doublets, or they may use them only in certain situations. Translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning.

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean “very old.”

### Description

We are using the word doublet to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing and that are used in the same phrase. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

### Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but they may do it for a reason that would not fit in a particular verse.

### Examples from the Bible

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

This means that he was “very old.”

he attacked two men *more righteous* and *better* than himself (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared “many false things to say.”

as of a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot*. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish—not even one.

### Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use your culture’s way of doing that.

### Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.

- **You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

- ”You have decided to prepare *false* things to say.”

2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

- **King David was *old* and *advanced in years***. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

- ”King David was *very old*.”

3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

- **a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot***. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

- ”a lamb *without any blemish at all*”

## Euphemism

*This answers the question: What is a Euphemism?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

### Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons were dead. It is euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Readers may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

### Examples from the Bible

where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so he does not say specifically what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

whether we are awake or asleep (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)

Paul refers to being dead as being “asleep” so that instead of thinking that they will never see their loved ones again in this life, his readers will remember that they will see them again when Jesus establishes his kingdom.

### Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
  - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet”
  - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole”
  - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone”

2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **whether we are awake or asleep** (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)
  - “whether we are alive or dead”

## Exclusive “We”

This answers the question: What is exclusive “we”?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an inclusive form that means “I and you” and an exclusive form that means “I and someone else but not you.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

### Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but *not* you.” The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow



highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



**Reason this is a translation issue** - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we”. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

### Examples from the Bible

Forgive *us our* sins (Luke 11:4 ULB)

God has no sins to forgive; so languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

*we* have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULB)



John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Inclusive “We”*

## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

*This answers the question: What are assumed knowledge, implicit information, and explicit information?*

**Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. There are two types information.

- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, although what he says may remind them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

### Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes *have holes*, and the birds of the sky *have nests*, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**. Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the

people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For *they do not wash their hands when they eat*. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. They were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*

## Hyperbole

*This answers the question: What is hyperbole?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. He may greatly exaggerate something in order to show his strong feeling or opinion about it, or he may generalize the situation by using words like “every” or “all” to mean “many.”

### Description

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. There are two kinds of hyperbole:

1. Exaggeration: This is when a speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it.

Whoever does not *carry his own cross* and come after me cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:27 ULB) - This is an exaggeration. It means that whoever wants to be Jesus’ disciple must be determined to follow him faithfully, even if his enemies were to kill that person.

2. Generalization: This is when a speaker uses words like “every” or “all” to mean something like “very many,” but not “every one.” (Some people may not call generalization like this “hyperbole.”)

Moses was educated in *all the learning of the Egyptians* (Acts 7:22 ULB) - This is a generalization. It means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

### Reason this is a translation issue

If readers do not understand that a statement is a hyperbole, they may either think that something happened that did not happen, or they may think that the speaker or writer was saying something that is not true.

### Examples from the Bible

#### Examples of Exaggeration

If your hand causes you to stumble, *cut it off*. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:26 ULB)

Because of many other things that Jesus said, we know that his use of the word “hate” here is hyperbole. He meant that we must not love even our own family members more than we love him. We must love him more than we love ourselves or anyone else.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

### Examples of Generalization

They found him, and they said to him, “*Everyone* is looking for you.” (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus closest friends there were looking for him.

But as his anointing teaches you about *all things* and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God’s Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know.

### Caution

Do not assume that something is hyperbole just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

... they saw Jesus *walking on the sea* and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

... for *all* have sinned and come short of the glory of God. (Romans 3:23 ULB)

The word “all” here is not hyperbole. All humans have sinned. The only human who has never sinned is Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

## Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole. For example “all the people” could be translated as “large crowds of people.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole.

- **If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.** (Luke 14:26 ULB)
  - “If anyone comes to me and does not *love me much more than* he loves his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.”
- **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*.** (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
  - “The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and *a great number of troops*.”

## Idiom

*This answers the question: What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

An idiom is a certain kind of figure of speech, the kind that usually cannot be correctly understood without being told its true meaning. Every language has them. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

## Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture that uses it. Its meaning may be different from what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely *set his face* to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should *enter under my roof*. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The words “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

**Purpose:** An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that originally wrote the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.

## Examples from the Bible

“Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, ”Look, we are your flesh and bone.”  
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

The kings of the earth take their stand together (Psalm 2:2 ULB)

This means, “The kings on earth plan together.”

the one who lifts up my head” (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

## Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

- **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.”** (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
  - “...Look, we all belong to the same nation.”
- **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
  - “He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.”
- **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
  - “I am not worthy that you should enter my house.”

2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

- **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
  - “Be all ears when I say these words to you.”
- **”My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7ULB)
  - “I am crying my eyes out”



## Inclusive “We”

*This answers the question: What is inclusive “we”?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- **Pronouns**

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.”

### Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



**Reason this is a translation issue** - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

### Examples from the Bible

... the shepherds said one to each other, “Let *us* now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to *us*.” (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us”, they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let *us* go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to.

Watch the video for computer (see <http://youtu.be/PrMC2jdqY0A> ) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/2K2gFIPMFVk> ).

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Exclusive “We”*

## Metaphor

*This answers the question: What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- [Figures of Speech](#)
- [Simile](#)

### Description

A metaphor is the use of words to speak of one thing as if it were a different thing. Sometimes a speaker does this in ways that are very common in the language. At other times, a speaker does this in ways that are less common in the language and that might even be unique.

1. First we will discuss very common metaphors.

The metaphors that are very common in a language are usually not very vivid. They may even be “dead.” Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” and “the price of food is going up.” Examples in biblical languages are “hand” to mean “power,” “face” to mean “presence,” and “clothing” to mean emotions or moral qualities.

Metaphors like these are in constant use in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, languages speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that can be seen or held, or as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that you can watch happen.

When these metaphors are used in their normal ways, the speaker and audience do not normally even regard them as figurative language. This is why, for example, it would be wrong to translate the English expression, “The price of petrol is going up” into another language in a way that would draw undeserved attention to it, because English speakers do not view it as a vivid expression, that is, as an unusual expression that carries meaning in an unusual manner.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

2. Next we will discuss the less common metaphors, metaphors that are sometimes even unique in a language.

The speaker usually produces metaphors of this kind in order to emphasize the importance of what he is talking about. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. And he speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

We call this kind of metaphor “live.” It is unique in the biblical languages, which means that it is very memorable.

### Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. The thing someone speaks of is called the **topic**. The thing he calls it is the **image**. The way that they are similar is the **point of comparison**.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a rose. The woman (his “love”) is the topic and the red rose is the image. Both are beautiful and delicate.

- My love is a red, red rose.

1. Sometimes the **topic** and the **image** are both stated clearly.

Jesus said to them. *“I am the bread of life. He who comes to me will not hunger, and he who believes on me will never thirst.”* (John 6:35 ULB)

Jesus called himself the bread of life. The topic is “I” and the image is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have spiritual life.

2. Sometimes only the **image** is stated clearly.

Produce *fruits* that are worthy of repentance (Luke 3:8 ULB)

The image here is “fruits”. The topic is not stated, but it is actions or behavior. Trees can produce good fruit or bad fruit, and people can produce good behavior or bad behavior. Fruits that are worthy of repentance are good behavior that is appropriate for people who have repented.

### Purposes of this second kind of metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel toward another.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not realize that a word is being used as an image in a metaphor.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know how the topic and the image are alike.

### Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.

- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than it was to the original audience.

### Examples from the Bible

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you” and the images are “clay and ”potter.” Just as a potter takes clay and forms a jar or dish out of it, God makes us into what he wants us to be.

Jesus said to them, ”Take heed and beware of *the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.*” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor about the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

### Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

- **For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he fell asleep*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay,** (Acts 13:36 ULB)

- "For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he died*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay."

2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding "like" or "as."

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand."

3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to *kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)

- "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick."

4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand."
- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.

- **I will make you become *fishers of men*.** (Mark 1:17 ULB )

- "I will make you become *people who gather men*."
- "Now you gather fish. I will make you *gather people*."

6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)

- "Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted."

7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
  - "Yahweh lives; may he be praised because like a huge rock, *he shields me from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted."
- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you *to kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
  - "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself* like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick."

To learn more about common metaphors read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#)

## Metonymy

*This answers the question: What is a metonymy?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Many times the Bible uses metonymy. If you do not recognize it as a metonymy you will not understand the passage or worse yet, get the wrong understanding of the passage.

### Description

**Metonymy** is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and *the blood* of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

### Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a concrete object associated with it.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- If a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

### Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. Throne is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or, "reign." This means that God would make him become the king who was to follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.



who warned you to flee from *the wrath* that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

### Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here is an option.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

- **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
  - “He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*The wine in this cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

- **The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
  - “The Lord God will give him *the kingly authority* of his father, David.”
  - “The Lord God will *make him king* like his ancestor, King David.”
- **who warned you to flee from *the wrath* to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
  - “who warned you to flee from God’s coming *punishment*?”

To learn about some common metonymies, we suggest you read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies](#)

## Parallelism

*This answers the question: What is parallelism?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

### Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use the kind of parallelism in which the two phrases mean the same thing. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning.

### Examples from the Bible

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;  
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,  
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

3. The second completes what is said in the first.

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,  
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,  
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,  
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

### **Translation Strategies**

1. For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases.
2. When the two clauses or phrases mean the same thing, some languages would not translate them both. (See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

### **Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#)

## Pronouns

*This answers the question: What are pronouns and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Parts of Speech*

Pronouns are words that people use instead of a noun to refer to someone or something. Some examples are I, you, he, it, this, that, himself, someone.

### Description

Pronouns are words that people use instead of a noun to refer to someone or something. There are six different types of pronouns.

### Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show if the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may give.

#### Person

- First Person - The speaker and possibly others (I, we)
  - Inclusive “We”
  - Exclusive “We”
- Second Person - The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
  - Forms of You
- Third Person - Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

#### Number

- Singular - one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural - more than one (we, you, they)
- Dual - two (Some languages have pronouns for specifically two people or two things.)

#### Gender

- Masculine - he
- Feminine - she
- Neuter - it

**Relationship to other words in the sentence**

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

**Other Types of pronouns**

**Reflexive Pronouns** refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

- **John saw *himself* in the mirror.** - The word “himself” refers to John.

**Interrogative Pronouns** are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: who, whom, whose, what, where, when, why, how

- ***Who* built the house?**

**Relative Pronouns** mark a relative clause: that, which, who, whom, where, when

- **I saw the house *that* John built.** The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.
- **I saw the man *who* built the house.** The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

**Demonstrative Pronouns** are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else: this, these, that, those.

- **Have you seen *this* here?**
- **Who is *that* over there?**

**Indefinite pronouns** are used when no particular noun is being referred to: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used: you, they, he or it.

- **He does not want to talk to *anyone*.**
- ***Someone* fixed it, but I do not know *who*.**

## Rhetorical Question

*This answers the question: What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express sarcasm or to rebuke or scold the hearer. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other reasons as well.

### Description

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers often use rhetorical questions to rebuke or scold people.

Those who stood by said, *Is this how you insult God's high priest?*" (Acts 23:4 ULB) The people did not ask this question in order to get information. Rather they used it to scold Paul because they did not think he should have spoken as he did to the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to remind people of something that they already know, to express strong emotion, to say something in a strong way, or to introduce something they want to talk about.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may think that a question is a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions only for scolding.
- Some readers might think that the purpose of a question is something other than what it really is.

### Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel he should feel free to take the man's property.

*Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!* (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a woman would never forget her jewelry and veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat.

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed which a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

### **Translation Strategies**

Be sure you know that you are dealing with a rhetorical question and not an information question. Then be sure you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.

- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
  - *Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!*
- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
  - *”Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!”*

2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

- **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
  - *“This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed...”*
- **Is this how you insult God’s high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
  - *You should not insult God’s high priest!”*
- **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
  - *I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!”*
- **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
  - *“How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!”*

3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

- **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
  - *”You still rule the kingdom of Israel, don’t you?”*



## Synecdoche

*This answers the question: What does the word synecdoche mean?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Figures of Speech*

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

### Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

*My soul* exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul”, the part of herself that has emotions, to refer to her whole self.

*the Pharisees* said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”  
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

### Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that *my hands* had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the legs and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved.

### Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

- **My soul exalts the Lord.** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
  - "I exalt the Lord."
- **the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)
  - "a representative of the Pharisees said to him"
- **I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
  - "I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished"

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Metonymy*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies*

## Forms of You

*This answers the question: What are the different forms of you?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Forms of 'You' - Singular*
- *Forms of 'You' - Dual/Plural*

### Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some have other forms that refer to three or four people.

Watch the video for Singular, Dual, and Plural “you” for computer (see <http://youtu.be/cPtjzJ2Advk>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/AVITfDEk8nc>).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- *Forms of 'You' - Singular to a Crowd*

### Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend. Watch the video on Formal and Informal ‘You’ on the **computer** or on the **tablet/phone**. For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- *Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal*

## Translating Son and Father

*This answers the question: Why are these concepts important in referring to God?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Create Faithful Translations*
- *Son of God and God the Father*

unfoldingWord supports only Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

### **“Father” and “Son” are names that God calls himself in the Bible.**

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son.

After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and... a voice came out of the heavens saying, *“This is my beloved Son. I am very pleased with him.”* (Matthew 3:16-17 ULB)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father.

Jesus said, *“I praise you Father, Lord of heaven and earth,... no one knows the Son except the Father, and no one knows the Father except the Son”* (Matthew 11:25-27 ULB) (See also: John 6:26-57 ULB)

Christians have found that “Father” and “Son” are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the kind of eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

Baptize them into *the name of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.* (Matthew 28:19 ULB)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal.

no one knows who the Son is except the Father, and no one knows who the Father is except the Son. (Luke 10:22 ULB)

Jesus said, *“Father, glorify your Son so that the Son may glorify you... I glorified you on the earth,... Now Father, glorify me... with the glory that I had with you before the world was created.”* (John 17:1-5 ULB)

The Father *loves* the Son. (John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULB)

I *love* the Father, I do what the Father commands me, just as he gave me the commandment. (John 14:31 ULB)

**Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.**

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used and refer to a human “father” and “son.”

**Translation Strategies**

1. Think through all the possibilities that your language has to translate the words “son” and “father.” Determine which words in your language best represent the divine “Son” and “Father.”
2. If your language has more than one word for “son,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “only son” (or “first son” if necessary).
3. If your language has more than one word for “father,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “birth father,” rather than “adoptive father.”

The following pages will help you with translating “Father” and “Son.”

- [God the Father, heavenly Father, Father](#)
- [Son of God, the Son, Son](#)

## How to Translate Names

*This answers the question: How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Translate Unknowns*

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

### Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. All names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this *Melchizedek*, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” simply to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” simply to tell us something about Melchizedek.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace. (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

### Examples from the Bible

You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the *Amorites* (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the the Living One who sees me.”

She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name *Moses* sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

*Saul* was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that *Paul* and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names *Saul* and *Paul* refer to the same person.

### Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name all of the time and write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with the *Amorites*** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
  - “You went over the *Jordan River* and came to the city of *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with *the tribe of the Amorites*”
- **Shortly after, some *Pharisees* came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *Herod* wants to kill you.”** (Luke 13:31 ULB)

- “Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *King Herod* wants to kill you.”

2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

- **She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
  - “She named him *Moses*, which sounds like ‘drawn out,’ and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.

- **she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
  - “she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Well of the One who sees me*;

4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text talks about that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.

For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
  - “a young man named *Paul*”<sup>1</sup> The footnote would look like:
    - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB)
  - “But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;”

5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
  - “a young man named *Saul*”
- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB) \*  
 “But \_\_Saul\_\_, who is also called \_\_Paul\_\_, was filled with the Holy Spirit;” \* \*\*It came about in Iconium that \_\_Paul\_\_ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue\*\*  
 ([[en:bible:notes:act:14:01 | Acts 14:1 ULB)



- "It came about in Iconium that *Paul*<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue"  
(Acts 14:1 ULB) The footnote would look like:
  - ◇ <sup>[1]</sup>This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

*Next we recommend you learn about:*

- *Copy or Borrow Words*

## Textual Variants

*This answers the question: Why does the ULB have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Choosing a Source Text*
- *Original Manuscripts*

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. Sometimes the copiers added sentences by mistake or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULB, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

### Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, and some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULB based the ULB on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULB may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULB translators included footnotes that tell about some of the differences between them.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULB and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULB. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

### Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULB has a footnote about verse 11.

<sup>10</sup>See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. <sup>11</sup>[<sup>1</sup>]

[<sup>1</sup>] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. *For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.*

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULB, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

<sup>53</sup>[Then every man went to his own house.... <sup>11</sup>She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more.”]<sup>[2]</sup>

<sup>[2]</sup>The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:35-8:11

## Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULB or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:15-16 ULB, which has a footnote about verse 16.

- <sup>14</sup>He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup>There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” <sup>16</sup>[<sup>1</sup>

- <sup>[1]</sup>Many ancient authorities insert v. 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

1. Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.

- <sup>14</sup>He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup>There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” <sup>16</sup>[<sup>1</sup>

- <sup>[1]</sup>Many ancient authorities insert verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

- <sup>14</sup>He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup>There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him. <sup>16</sup>If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” <sup>[1]</sup>

- <sup>[1]</sup>Some ancient authorities do not have verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Chapter and Verse Numbers*

- *Original Manuscripts*
- *Terms to Know*
- *The Original and Source Languages*

## Translate Unknowns

*This answers the question: How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Sentences*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

### Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

### Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

### Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals* (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous *wolves*. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what *myrrh* is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made *great lights* (Psalm 136:7ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins ... will be white like *snow* (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

### Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
  - "Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but *are truly hungry and dangerous animals.*"
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
  - "We have here only five *loaves of baked grain seeds* and two fish"

2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins ... will be white like *snow*** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
  - "your sins ... will be white like *milk*"
  - "your sins ... will be white like *the moon*"

3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."
  - "Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *a medicine called myrrh*. But he refused to drink it."
- **We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
  - "We have here only five loaves of *baked crushed seed bread* and two fish"

4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals*** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
  - "I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *wild dogs*"
- **We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
  - "We have here only five *loaves of baked food* and two fish"

5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made *great lights*** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
  - "to him who made *the sun and the moon*"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*
- *How to Translate Names*

## Connecting Words

*This answers the question: What are connecting words for, and how do I translate them?*

*In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:*

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

**Connecting words** show how thoughts are related to other thoughts. They are also called **conjunctions**. This page is about connecting words that connect statements and groups of statements to others. Some examples are: and, but, for, so, therefore, now, if, if only, since, then, when, while, whenever, because, yet, unless.

### Description

Connecting words show how thoughts are related to other thoughts. This page is about connecting words that connect statements and groups of statements to others. Some examples of connecting words are: and, but, for, so, therefore, now, if, if only, since, then, when, while, whenever, because, yet, unless.

- It was raining, *so* I opened my umbrella.
- It was raining, *but* I did not have an umbrella. *So* I got very wet.

Sometimes people do not use a connecting word because they expect the readers to understand the relationship between the thoughts because of the context.

- It was raining. I didn't have an umbrella. I got very wet.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Translators need to understand the meaning of a connecting word in the Bible and the relationship between the thoughts it is connecting.
- Each language has its own ways of showing how thoughts are related.
- Translators need to know how to help their readers understand the relationship between the thoughts.

### Translation Principles

- Translators need to translate in a way that readers can understand the same relationship between thoughts that the original readers would have understood.
- Whether or not a connecting word is used is not as important as readers being able to understand the relationship between the ideas.



### Examples from the Bible

*And* when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was a delight to the eyes, and that the tree was desirable to make one wise, she took some of its fruit, and ate it. *And* she gave some also to her husband who was with her, *and* he ate it. (Genesis 3:6 ULB)

The word “and” can connect words, phrases, clauses, or sentences. The underlined examples above show where it connects clauses and sentences. In this verse, the event that follows “and” happened after the event before “and”.

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me, *but* instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. *Then* after three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days. (Galatians 1:16-18 ULB)

The word “but” introduces something that contrasts with what was said before. The contrast here is between what Paul did not do with what he did do. Here the word “then” introduces something Paul did after he returned to Damascus.

Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. *But* whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULB)

Here the word “But” contrasts what one group of people will be called in God’s kingdom with what another group of people will be called.

### Translation Strategies

If the way the relationship between thoughts is shown in the ULB would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use a connecting word (even if the ULB does not use one).
2. Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.
3. Use a different connecting word.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a connecting word (even if the ULB does not use one).
  - **Jesus said to them, “Come after me, and I will make you become fishers of men.” Immediately they left the nets and went after him.** (Mark 1:17-18 ULB) - They followed Jesus because he told them to. Some translators may want to mark this with “so.”
    - “Jesus said to them, ”Come after me, and I will make you become fishers of men.” So immediately they left the nets and went after him.”

2. Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

- **And when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was a delight to the eyes, and that the tree was desirable to make one wise, she took some of its fruit, and ate it. And she gave some also to her husband who was with her, and he ate it.** (Genesis 3:6 ULB) - The word “and” here simply shows that something else happened. Some languages would not need to start the sentence with “and.”
  - “And when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was a delight to the eyes, and that the tree was desirable to make one wise, she took some of its fruit, and ate it. She also gave some to her husband who was with her, and he ate it.” (Genesis 3:6 ULB)
- **I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me, but instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. Then after three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days.** (Galatians 1:16-18 ULB) Some languages might not need the words “but” or “then” here.
  - “I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. Instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. After three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days.

3. Use a different connecting word.

- **Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.** (Matthew 5:19 ULB) - The word “but” is used here because of the contrast between the two groups of people. But in some languages, the word “but” would show that what comes after it is surprising because of what came before it. So “and” might be clearer for those languages.
  - “Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. And whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.”
- **Since the captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.** (Acts 21:34 ULB) - Instead of starting the first part of the sentence with “since”, some translators might prefer to start the second part of the sentence with “so”.
  - “The captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, so he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.”